

# Quantum Mechanics Exercises Notes

Elijan Mastnak

Winter Semester 2020-2021

## About These Notes

These are my notes from the Exercises portion of the class *Kvanta Mehanika* (Quantum Mechanics), a required course for third-year physics students at the Faculty of Math and Physics in Ljubljana, Slovenia. The exact problem sets herein are specific to the physics program at the University of Ljubljana, but the content is fairly standard for a late-undergraduate quantum mechanics course. I am making the notes [publicly available](#) in the hope that they might help others learning similar material.

*Navigation:* For easier document navigation, the table of contents is “clickable”, meaning you can jump directly to a section by clicking the colored section names in the table of contents. Unfortunately, *the clickable links do not work in most online or mobile PDF viewers*; you have to download the file first.

*On Authorship:* The exercises are led by Asst. Prof. Tomaž Rejec, who has assembled the problem sets and guides us through the solutions. Accordingly, credit for the problems in these notes goes to Prof. Rejec. I have merely typeset the problems and provided an additional explanation or two where I saw fit.

*Disclaimer:* Mistakes—both trivial typos and legitimate errors—are likely. Keep in mind that these are the notes of an undergraduate student in the process of learning the material himself—take what you read with a grain of salt. If you find mistakes and feel like telling me, by [Github](#) pull request, [email](#) or some other means, I’ll be happy to hear from you, even for the most trivial of errors.

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>First Exercise Set</b>	<b>4</b>
1.1	Theory: Basic Concepts in Quantum Mechanics . . . . .	4
1.2	Bound States in a Finite Potential Well . . . . .	5
1.3	Theory: Wavefunctions of a Particle in an Even Potential . . . . .	7
1.4	Finite Potential Well, Second Approach . . . . .	8
<b>2</b>	<b>Second Exercise Set</b>	<b>10</b>
2.1	Bound States in a Delta Potential Well . . . . .	10
2.2	Bound States in a Delta Potential, Second Approach . . . . .	11
2.3	Theory: Scattering . . . . .	12
2.4	Scattering From a Delta Potential . . . . .	15
<b>3</b>	<b>Third Exercise Set</b>	<b>17</b>
3.1	Theory: Uncertainty Product of Observable Quantities . . . . .	17
3.2	Wave Function Minimizing the Uncertainty Product . . . . .	19
<b>4</b>	<b>Fourth Exercise Set</b>	<b>20</b>
4.1	Wave Function Minimizing the Uncertainty Product (continued) . . . . .	20
4.2	Theory: Time Evolution of a Wave Function . . . . .	21
4.3	Theory: Time-Dependent Expectation Values and Operators . . . . .	22
4.4	Time Evolution of the Gaussian Wave Packet . . . . .	24
<b>5</b>	<b>Fifth Exercise Set</b>	<b>28</b>
5.1	Time Evolution of a Gaussian Wave Packet (continued) . . . . .	28
5.2	Theory: Quantum Harmonic Oscillator . . . . .	29
5.3	Time Evolution of a Particle in a Harmonic Oscillator . . . . .	30
<b>6</b>	<b>Sixth Exercise Set</b>	<b>33</b>
6.1	Theory: Coherent States of the Quantum Harmonic Oscillator . . . . .	33
6.2	Harmonic Oscillator in an Electric Field . . . . .	39
<b>7</b>	<b>Seventh Exercise Set</b>	<b>41</b>
7.1	Theory: Two-Dimensional Harmonic Oscillator . . . . .	41
7.2	Two-Dimensional Isotropic Harmonic Oscillator . . . . .	43
<b>8</b>	<b>Eight Exercise Set</b>	<b>45</b>
8.1	Two-Dimensional Isotropic Harmonic Oscillator (continued) . . . . .	45
8.2	Larmor Precession . . . . .	49
<b>9</b>	<b>Ninth Exercise Set</b>	<b>53</b>
9.1	Larmor Precession (continued) . . . . .	53
9.2	Rashba Coupling . . . . .	55
<b>10</b>	<b>Tenth Exercise Set</b>	<b>61</b>
10.1	Rashba Coupling with Pauli Spin Matrices . . . . .	61
10.2	Theory: Time Reversal Symmetry . . . . .	62
10.3	Time-Reversal Symmetry and Rashba Coupling . . . . .	63
10.4	Scattering on a Spin-Dependent Delta Function . . . . .	65

<b>11 Eleventh Exercise Set</b>	<b>66</b>
11.1 Scattering on a Spin-Dependent Delta Function (continued)	66
<b>12 Twelfth Exercise Set</b>	<b>74</b>
12.1 Theory: Non-Degenerate Perturbation Theory	74
12.2 QHO with a Quartic Perturbation	75
12.3 QHO with a Cubic Perturbation	76
<b>13 Thirteenth Exercise Set</b>	<b>79</b>
13.1 Theoretical Background for the Coming Problem	79
13.1.1 Degenerate Perturbation Theory	79
13.1.2 Review of Hydrogen Atom Eigenvalues and Eigenfunctions	80
13.1.3 Parity Symmetry	81
13.2 Hydrogen Atom in a Homogeneous Electric Field	82
<b>14 Fourteenth Exercise Set</b>	<b>87</b>
14.1 Theory: First-Order Time-Dependent Perturbations	87
14.2 Hydrogen Atom Exposed to an Electric Field Pulse	88
14.3 Spin 1/2 Particle in a Time-Varying Magnetic Field	91
<b>15 Fifteenth Exercise Set</b>	<b>95</b>
15.1 Rabi Oscillations	95

# 1 First Exercise Set

## 1.1 Theory: Basic Concepts in Quantum Mechanics

- The fundamental quantity in quantum mechanics is the wave function, which in one dimension reads  $\psi(x, t)$ . All measurable quantities are fundamentally derived from the wave function. As an example, we consider probability density

$$\rho(x, t) = |\psi(x, t)|^2 = \frac{dp}{dx},$$

where  $dp$  represents the probability of finding a particle with the wave function  $\psi(x, t)$  in the  $x$  interval  $dx$  at time  $t$ .

- For the majority of this course, we will work with a one-dimensional, time-independent Hamiltonian operator of the form

$$\hat{H} = \frac{\hat{p}^2}{2m} + V(x) \quad \text{where} \quad \hat{p} = -i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x}.$$

**Notation:** By convention, we usually write operators without the hat symbol and distinguish between operators and scalar quantities based on context.

- We will often solve the stationary Schrödinger equation, which reads

$$H\psi_n(x) = E_n\psi_n(x).$$

Note that  $\psi$  is time-independent, and that the stationary Schrödinger equation is an eigenvalue equation, where  $E_n$  are the eigenvalues of the Hamiltonian operator and  $\psi_n$  are the corresponding eigenfunctions.

We then use the solutions  $\psi_n(x)$  of the stationary Schrödinger equation to find the time-dependent wave function  $\psi(x, t)$ . This process is called *time evolution*.

- The time evolution procedure goes as follows: Start with an initial wavefunction  $\psi(x, 0)$  at time  $t = 0$ . Expand  $\psi(x, 0)$  over a basis of the eigenfunctions  $\psi_n(x)$  to get

$$\psi(x, 0) = \sum_n c_n \psi_n(x).$$

The time-dependent wave function is then

$$\psi(x, t) = \sum_n c_n e^{-\frac{iE_n}{\hbar}t} \psi_n(x).$$

We have essentially replaced the constant coefficients  $c_n$  in the stationary expansion with the time-dependent coefficients  $\tilde{c}_n = c_n e^{-\frac{iE_n}{\hbar}t}$ .

- Next, we consider a particle's energy eigenvalues. A particle or quantum system typically has as many eigenvalues as the dimension of the Hilbert space containing the system's wave functions. Often, such as for a free particle, the Hilbert space is infinite. The set of all energy eigenvalues is  $\{E_n\}$  and is often called the spectrum.

The number of linearly independent eigenfunctions a system has at a given energy eigenvalue  $E_n$  is called the eigenvalue's degeneracy.

- Next, we consider a quantum particle's eigenfunctions. We start with a non-degenerate energy level with eigenfunction  $\psi_n$  with the eigenvalue relation

$$H\psi_n(x) = E_n\psi_n(x).$$

If  $\psi_n$  solves the eigenvalue problem, then mathematically  $\lambda\psi_n$  also solves the eigenvalue problem for all  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ . But physically, there is a restriction: the probability density must be normalized to unity, i.e.

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\psi_n(x)|^2 dx = 1.$$

The normalization condition requires  $|\lambda| = 1$ , which is often written  $\lambda = e^{i\alpha}$  where  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ . This result is important: essentially, any eigenfunction  $\psi_n$  is undetermined up to a constant phase factor  $\lambda = e^{i\alpha}$  of magnitude  $|\lambda| = 1$ .

In other words, the two wavefunctions

$$\psi_n(x) \quad \text{and} \quad e^{i\alpha}\psi_n(x)$$

are physically identical. We can't distinguish between the two in experiments, because the phase factor  $e^{i\alpha}$  is lost during the process of finding the probability density when squaring the absolute value. *All wave functions are determined only up to a constant phase factor of magnitude one.*

As an example, consider an infinite potential well with  $x \in [0, a]$ . The energy eigenvalues and eigenfunctions are

$$E_n = \frac{\hbar^2 \pi^2 n^2}{2ma^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \psi_n(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{a}} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a}, \quad n \in \mathbb{N}^+.$$

However, e.g.  $\tilde{\psi}_n(x) = i\sqrt{\frac{2}{a}} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a}$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$  represents the same physical information as  $\psi_n$ .

## 1.2 Bound States in a Finite Potential Well

*Find the energy eigenvalues of the bound states of a particle with energy  $E$  in a finite potential well of depth  $V_0 > 0$  and width  $a$ . Assume  $|E| < V_0$ ; note that bound states have negative energies.*

- Split the  $x$  axis into three regions: to the left of the well, inside the well, and to the right of the well, e.g. regions 1, 2 and 3, respectively. The potential energy is

$$V(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x \in \text{region 1} \\ -V_0, & x \in \text{region 2} \\ 0, & x \in \text{region 3} \end{cases}.$$

- The Schrödinger equation for region 1 is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial x^2} + 0 \cdot \psi = E\psi,$$

where we have substituted in  $V = 0$  in region 1. The general solution is a linear combination of exponential functions of the form

$$\psi_1(x) = Ae^{\kappa x} + Be^{-\kappa x}.$$

To find  $\kappa$ , insert  $\psi_1$  into the Schrödinger equation for region 1. Differentiating, canceling the wave function terms from both sides, and rearranging gives

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\kappa^2 (Ae^{i\kappa x} + Be^{-i\kappa x}) = E (Ae^{i\kappa x} + Be^{-i\kappa x}) \implies \kappa^2 = \frac{2mE_0}{\hbar^2},$$

where  $E_0 = -E$  is a positive quantity.

- The Schrödinger equation for region 2 is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial x^2} - V_0 \cdot \psi = E\psi.$$

We use a plane wave ansatz of the form

$$\psi_2(x) = Ce^{ikx} + De^{-ikx}.$$

To find  $k$ , insert  $\psi_2$  into the Schrödinger equation for region 2. The result after differentiation is

$$+\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}k^2 (Ce^{ikx} + De^{-ikx}) - V_0 (Ce^{ikx} + De^{-ikx}) = E (Ce^{ikx} + De^{-ikx}).$$

The wave function terms in parentheses cancel, leading to  $k^2 = \frac{2m(V_0 - E_0)}{\hbar^2}$  where  $E_0 = -E$  is a positive quantity.

- The Schrödinger equation for region 3 is analogous to the equation for region 1. Following a similar procedure, we would get

$$\psi_3 = Fe^{\kappa x} + Ge^{-\kappa x} \quad \text{where} \quad \kappa^2 = \frac{2mE_0}{\hbar^2}.$$

- Next, to find energy, we apply boundary conditions, namely that the wave function is continuous and continuously differentiable at the boundaries between regions and that the functions vanishes at  $\pm\infty$ , meaning there is no probability of finding the particle infinitely far away from the well. The conditions are:

Region	Condition 1	Condition 2
1/2	$\psi_1(0) = \psi_2(0)$	$\frac{\partial \psi_1}{\partial x}(0) = \frac{\partial \psi_2}{\partial x}(0)$
2/3	$\psi_2(a) = \psi_3(a)$	$\frac{\partial \psi_2}{\partial x}(a) = \frac{\partial \psi_3}{\partial x}(a)$
$\pm\infty$	$\psi_1(-\infty) = 0$	$\psi_3(\infty) = 0$

The last two conditions at  $\pm\infty$  require that  $B = 0$  and  $F = 0$ , respectively; otherwise  $\psi_1$  and  $\psi_3$  would diverge. The continuity conditions (in the Condition 1 column) require

$$A = C + D \quad \text{and} \quad Ce^{ika} + De^{-ika} = Ge^{-\kappa a}.$$

The continuous differentiability conditions require

$$A\kappa = ik(C - D) \quad \text{and} \quad ik(Ce^{ika} - De^{-ika}) = -\kappa Ge^{-\kappa a}.$$

- We could then write the four equations in a  $4 \times 4$  coefficient matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dots \\ \dots \\ \dots \\ \dots \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} A \\ B \\ C \\ D \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

To proceed, we would require the matrix's determinant be zero for a unique solution. The determinant of the coefficient matrix is a function of  $\kappa$  and  $k$ , which are in turn functions of energy. We then view the matrix's determinant as a function of energy and try to find its zeros. Each zero is an energy eigenvalue of the particle in a finite potential well. However, this involves solving the above system of four equations for the four unknowns  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  and  $D$ . That's tedious! We will stop here and solve the same problem more elegantly in the next exercise. But first, we'll need some theoretical machinery.

### 1.3 Theory: Wavefunctions of a Particle in an Even Potential

**Theorem:** The eigenfunctions of a particle in an even potential can always be chosen such that the eigenfunctions are either even or odd.

- First, recall the superposition principle: if two eigenfunctions  $\psi_1$  and  $\psi_2$  have the same eigenvalue  $E$ , then any linear combination of  $\psi_1$  and  $\psi_2$  is also an eigenfunction with eigenvalue  $E$ . In equation form, if  $H\psi_1(x) = E\psi_1(x)$  and  $H\psi_2(x) = E\psi_2(x)$  then

$$H(\alpha\psi_1(x) + \beta\psi_2(x)) = E(\alpha\psi_1(x) + \beta\psi_2(x)).$$

We'll use the superposition principle later in the proof when considering degenerate states.

- To prove the even/odd theorem for particles in an even potential  $V(x) = V(-x)$ , we start with the stationary Schrödinger equation

$$H\psi(x) = E\psi(x).$$

We make the parity transformation  $x \rightarrow -x$  and note the Hamiltonian is invariant under parity transformation if  $V$  is even, since  $\frac{\partial}{\partial(-x)} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x}$ , and  $\frac{\partial^2}{\partial(-x)^2} = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2}$ . Under the transformation  $x \rightarrow -x$ , the Schrödinger equation reads

$$H\psi(-x) = E\psi(-x).$$

This means that if  $\psi(x)$  is an eigenfunction of  $H$  for the energy eigenvalue  $E$ , then  $\psi(-x)$  is also an eigenfunction for the same energy eigenvalue.

- Next, we have two options: either the eigenvalue  $E$  is degenerate or it is not. If  $E$  is not degenerate, then  $\psi(-x)$  and  $\psi(x)$  are equal up to a constant phase factor. In other words, if  $E$  is not degenerate and  $V$  is even, then  $\psi(x)$  and  $\psi(-x)$  are linearly dependent. In equation form,

$$\psi(x) = e^{i\alpha}\psi(-x) = e^{2i\alpha}\psi(x) \implies e^{2i\alpha} = 1 \implies e^{i\alpha} = \pm 1.$$

If  $e^{i\alpha} = 1$ , then  $\psi$  is even, and if  $e^{i\alpha} = -1$ , then  $\psi$  is odd. There are no other options. In other words, the eigenfunctions corresponding to the non-degenerate states of a particle in an even potential are either even or odd, as we wanted to show.

- Next, if  $E$  is degenerate, then  $\psi(x)$  and  $\psi(-x)$  are by definition linearly independent. By the superposition principle, we can create two more linear combinations of  $\psi(x)$  and  $\psi(-x)$ : a sum and a difference, e.g.

$$\psi_+(x) = \psi(x) + \psi(-x) \quad \text{and} \quad \psi_-(x) = \psi(x) - \psi(-x).$$

Note that, by construction,  $\psi_+$  is even and  $\psi_-$  is odd. In other words, even though  $\psi_1$  and  $\psi_2$  may not be even or odd themselves, we can always combine the two into a valid eigenfunction that is either even or odd.

- The general takeaway is: if our problem's potential has reflection symmetry about the origin, we can a priori search for only even or odd functions, because we know there exists a basis of the surrounding Hilbert space formed of only odd and even eigenfunctions.

## 1.4 Finite Potential Well, Second Approach

*Continued from the previous problem: find the energy eigenvalues of the bound states of a particle with energy  $E$  in a finite potential well of depth  $V_0 > 0$  and width  $a$ .*

- Here's how to proceed: First, note the problem has reflection symmetry if we place the center of the well at the origin. The well then spans from  $x = -\frac{a}{2}$  to  $x = \frac{a}{2}$ . In this case  $V(x) = V(-x)$ , i.e. the potential is an even function of  $x$ .

Why is this useful? It reduces the number of wave functions we have to find by one. Namely, if the eigenfunctions are even, then  $\psi_3$  is a copy of  $\psi_1$ . If the eigenfunctions are odd, then  $\psi_3 = -\psi_1$ . In both cases, we only need to find  $\psi_1$ .

We then only need to solve the problem on half of the real axis.

- First, we assume the solution is an even function. Reusing results from the earlier treatment of the finite potential well, the wavefunctions in region 3 read

$$\psi_3 = Ge^{-\kappa x} \quad \text{where} \quad \kappa^2 = \frac{2mE_0}{\hbar^2},$$

and for region 2, inside the well, the even wavefunctions read

$$\psi_2 = A \cos(kx) \quad \text{where} \quad k^2 = \frac{2m(V_0 - E_0)}{\hbar^2}.$$

A few notes: we switched from plane waves to sinusoidal functions, where are better suited to odd/even symmetry. And we dropped the  $B \sin(kx)$  term and kept only the cosine because we're solving for an even function a priori.

For region 1, because we're searching for even functions, the result is the same as for region 3, i.e.

$$\psi_1 = Ge^{\kappa x}.$$

- If we assume an odd solution, the wavefunctions are

$$\psi_3(x) = Ge^{-\kappa x} \quad \psi_2(x) = B \sin(kx) \quad \psi_1(x) = -Ge^{\kappa x}.$$

- On to boundary conditions. Because an even or odd function will have the same behavior (up to a minus sign for odd functions) at both region boundaries, we only need to consider one region; we'll consider  $x = \frac{a}{2}$ . The boundary conditions are

$$\psi_2\left(\frac{a}{2}\right) = \psi_3\left(\frac{a}{2}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial \psi_2}{\partial x}\left(\frac{a}{2}\right) = \frac{\partial \psi_3}{\partial x}\left(\frac{a}{2}\right).$$



- For an even solution, the boundary conditions read:

$$A \cos\left(k\frac{a}{2}\right) = Ge^{-\frac{\kappa a}{2}} \quad \text{and} \quad -kA \sin\left(k\frac{a}{2}\right) = -\kappa Ge^{-\frac{\kappa a}{2}}.$$

Next, a trick: divide the equations and cancel like terms to get

$$k \tan\left(k\frac{a}{2}\right) = \kappa.$$

- For an odd solution, the boundary conditions read:

$$B \sin\left(k\frac{a}{2}\right) = Ge^{-\frac{\kappa a}{2}} \quad \text{and} \quad kB \cos\left(k\frac{a}{2}\right) = -\kappa Ge^{-\frac{\kappa a}{2}}.$$

Dividing the equations and cancel like terms gives

$$k \cot\left(k\frac{a}{2}\right) = -\kappa.$$

- The solutions of the two equations

$$\tan\left(\frac{ka}{2}\right) = \frac{\kappa}{k} \quad \text{and} \quad \cot\left(\frac{ka}{2}\right) = -\frac{\kappa}{k}$$

will give the energy eigenvalues of the even and odd states, respectively.

These are transcendental equations. They don't have analytic solutions, and we'll have to solve them graphically. First, we introduce the dimensionless variable  $u = ka$ . We then express  $\kappa$  in terms of  $u$  using

$$\kappa^2 + k^2 = \kappa^2 + \frac{u^2}{a^2} = \frac{2mV_0}{\hbar^2}.$$

Alternatively, in dimensionless form, we define  $u_0^2 = \frac{2mV_0a^2}{\hbar^2}$ , which leads to

$$\kappa^2 = \frac{u_0^2 - u^2}{a^2}.$$

- In terms of  $u$  and  $u_0$ , the two transcendental equations become

$$\tan\left(\frac{u}{2}\right) = \frac{\sqrt{u_0^2 - u^2}}{u} = \sqrt{\frac{u_0^2}{u^2} - 1} \quad \text{and} \quad \cot\left(\frac{u}{2}\right) = -\sqrt{\frac{u_0^2}{u^2} - 1}.$$

We then plot both sides of the equations and look for values of  $u$  where the left side equals the right side. These values of  $u$  give the energy eigenvalues, which are the solution to our problem.

Finally, some notes:

- The right sides of the equations are defined only for  $u \leq u_0$  and diverge as  $u \rightarrow 0$ .
- As  $u$  increases,  $k$  increases,  $E$  becomes more positive, and states become less bound. The ground state occurs at the smallest value of  $u$ .
- The number of bound states increases as  $u_0$  increases. This is achieved by increasing  $V_0$  (well depth),  $a$  (well width), or  $m$  (particle mass). A finite potential well always has at least one bound state, near  $u = 0$ .

## 2 Second Exercise Set

### 2.1 Bound States in a Delta Potential Well

Find the energies and wave functions of the bound states of a quantum particle of mass  $m$  in a delta function potential well by reusing the results from a finite potential well.

- We will reuse our results from the previous problem set by interpreting a delta potential as a finite potential well in the limit

$$a \rightarrow 0, \quad V_0 \rightarrow \infty \quad \text{and} \quad aV_0 = \text{constant} \equiv \lambda.$$

We then write the potential as  $V(x) = -\lambda\delta(x)$ .

- Recall from the previous exercise set that even bound states in a finite potential well of width  $a$  and depth  $V_0$  obey

$$\tan \frac{u}{2} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{u_0}{u}\right)^2 - 1} \quad \text{where} \quad u_0^2 = \frac{2mV_0a^2}{\hbar^2} \quad \text{and} \quad u = ak.$$

The wave numbers  $k$  and  $\kappa$  inside and outside the well are

$$k = \sqrt{\frac{2m(V_0 - E_0)}{\hbar^2}} \quad \text{and} \quad \kappa = \sqrt{\frac{2mE_0}{\hbar^2}}.$$

- The limit  $a \rightarrow 0$  forces  $u_0 \rightarrow 0$ . In the limit  $u_0 \rightarrow 0$ , we expect at most one, even bound state. For small  $u$  and  $u_0$ , we expect  $u$  and  $u_0$  to be very close, so we write

$$u = u_0 - \epsilon \quad \text{where} \quad \epsilon \ll 1.$$

We continue with a Taylor expansion approximation of the even bound state equation. To first order, the tangent function is

$$\tan \frac{u}{2} = \tan \frac{u_0 + \epsilon}{2} \approx \frac{u_0 + \epsilon}{2} + \dots,$$

while the square root is

$$\sqrt{\left(\frac{u_0}{u}\right)^2 - 1} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{u_0}{u_0 + \epsilon}\right)^2 - 1} = \sqrt{\left(1 - \frac{\epsilon}{u_0}\right)^{-2} - 1} \approx \sqrt{2\frac{\epsilon}{u_0}}.$$

- With the approximations, the original even bound state equation becomes

$$\frac{u_0 + \epsilon}{2} = \sqrt{2\frac{\epsilon}{u_0}}.$$

We square both sides and take only the leading  $u_0^2$  term from  $(u_0 + \epsilon)^2$  to get

$$\frac{(u_0 + \epsilon)^2}{4} \approx \frac{u_0^2}{4} = 2\frac{\epsilon}{u_0} \implies \epsilon = \left(\frac{u_0}{2}\right)^3.$$

Next, we solve for  $u$  in terms of  $u_0$  to get

$$u = u_0 - \epsilon = u_0 - \left(\frac{u_0}{2}\right)^3.$$

- We then use the equation for  $k$  to solve for  $E$  in terms of  $u_0$ :

$$k = \frac{u}{a} = \sqrt{\frac{2m(V_0 - E_0)}{\hbar^2}} \implies E_0 = V_0 - \frac{\hbar^2 u^2}{2ma^2} = V_0 - \frac{\hbar^2}{2ma^2} \left[ u_0 - \left( \frac{u_0}{2} \right)^3 \right]^2.$$

Multiplying out and dropping the small terms of order  $u_0^6$  gives

$$E_0 = V_0 - \frac{\hbar^2}{2ma^2} \left( u_0^2 - \frac{u_0^4}{4} \right).$$

We then substitute in the expression  $u_0^2 = \frac{2mV_0a^2}{\hbar^2}$ , which simplifies things to

$$E_0 = \frac{ma^2V_0^2}{2\hbar^2} = \frac{m\lambda^2}{2\hbar^2},$$

where the last equality uses  $\lambda = aV_0$ . This is the result for the bound state's energy.

- We find the corresponding wave function with the plane-wave ansatz

$$\psi(x) = \begin{cases} Ae^{\kappa x} & x < 0 \\ Be^{-\kappa x} & x > 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{where} \quad \kappa = \sqrt{\frac{2mE_0}{\hbar^2}} = \frac{m\lambda}{\hbar^2}.$$

Because the wave function is even,  $A = B$ , allowing us to write  $\psi = Ae^{-\kappa|x|}$ . we find the coefficient  $A$  from the normalization condition

$$1 \equiv \int |\psi(x)|^2 dx = A^2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-2\kappa|x|} dx.$$

Because  $\psi$  is even, we can integrate over only half the real line and double the result:

$$1 = 2A^2 \int_0^{\infty} e^{-2\kappa x} dx = -\frac{A^2}{\kappa} e^{-2\kappa x} \Big|_0^{\infty} = \frac{A^2}{\kappa} \implies A^2 = \kappa.$$

The wave function is thus

$$\psi(x) = \sqrt{\kappa} e^{-\kappa|x|} \quad \text{where} \quad \kappa = \frac{m\lambda}{\hbar^2}.$$

## 2.2 Bound States in a Delta Potential, Second Approach

*Find the energies and wave functions of the bound states of a quantum particle of mass  $m$  in a delta function potential well using a plane wave ansatz and appropriate boundary conditions.*

- Write the potential well in the form  $V(x) = -\lambda\delta(x)$ . The stationary Schrödinger equation for the potential reads

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial x^2} - \lambda\delta(x)\psi = E\psi.$$

We find the boundary condition on the derivative  $\psi'$  by integrating the Schrödinger equation over a small region  $[-\epsilon, \epsilon]$ .

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} \Big|_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} - \lambda \int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} \delta(x)\psi(x) dx = E \int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} \psi(x) dx.$$

In the limit  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ , this becomes

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} [\psi'(0_+) - \psi'(0_-)] - \lambda\psi(0) = 0,$$

where  $\psi'(0_+)$  and  $\psi'(0_-)$  denote  $\psi$ 's derivatives from the right and left, respectively. The appropriate boundary condition  $\psi'(x)$  are thus

$$\psi'(0_+) - \psi'(0_-) = -\frac{2m\lambda\psi(0)}{\hbar^2}.$$

- We construct the wavefunction with a plane-wave ansatz of the form

$$\psi(x) = \begin{cases} Ae^{\kappa x} & x < 0 \\ Be^{-\kappa x} & x > 0 \end{cases}.$$

As boundary conditions, we require that  $\psi$  is continuous and that  $\psi'$  obey the earlier condition  $\psi'(0_+) - \psi'(0_-) = \frac{2m\lambda\psi(0)}{\hbar^2}$ . Applying the continuity condition at  $x = 0$  gives

$$Ae^{\kappa \cdot 0} = Be^{-\kappa \cdot 0} \implies A = B.$$

Applying the condition on the derivatives (and using  $A = B$ ) gives

$$-\kappa A^{-\kappa \cdot 0} - \kappa A^{\kappa \cdot 0} = -\frac{2m\lambda}{\hbar^2} \psi(0) = -\frac{2m\lambda}{\hbar^2} Ae^{\kappa \cdot 0} \implies \kappa = \frac{m\lambda}{\hbar^2}.$$

The wave function is thus

$$\psi(x) = Ae^{-\kappa|x|} \quad \text{where} \quad \kappa = \frac{m\lambda}{\hbar^2}.$$

- We can find the bound state's energy from

$$\kappa = \sqrt{\frac{2mE_0}{\hbar^2}} \implies E_0 = \frac{m\lambda^2}{2\hbar^2}.$$

which matches the result from the previous problem. To find the wave function, we just need the value of  $A$ , which we find with the usual normalization condition

$$1 \equiv \int |\psi(x)|^2 dx = A^2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-2\kappa|x|} dx = 2A^2 \int_0^{\infty} e^{-2\kappa x} dx \implies A^2 = \kappa.$$

The wave function is thus

$$\psi(x) = \sqrt{\kappa} e^{-\kappa|x|} \quad \text{where} \quad \kappa = \frac{m\lambda}{\hbar^2},$$

in agreement with the result from the previous problem.

## 2.3 Theory: Scattering

- The basic scattering problem involves a particle with energy  $E$  and two regions of the  $x$  axis with potentials  $V_1$  and  $V_3$  respectively, where  $E > V_1, V_3$ . Both energies and potentials are positive quantities. Because  $E > V_1, V_3$ , the particle is free in the regions of  $V_1$  and  $V_3$ .

Near the origin, between regions 1 and 3, the particle encounters a small potential barrier where  $V(x) > E$ ; the exact form of  $V(x)$  is not important for our purposes. We call this region 3.

- The general ansatz solutions in regions 1 and 3 are

$$\psi_1 = A_1 e^{ik_1 x} + B_1 e^{-ik_1 x} \quad \text{and} \quad \psi_3 = A_3 e^{-ik_3 x} + B_3 e^{ik_3 x}.$$

The terms with  $A$  coefficients represent movement toward the potential barrier

- In region 2, we don't know  $V(x)$ , so we have to be more general. Because  $\psi_2$  comes from a second-order linear differential equation (i.e. the Schrödinger equation), its general form is a linear combination of two linearly independent functions, e.g.

$$\psi_2 = Cf(x) + Dg(x).$$

where  $f$  and  $g$  are linearly independent solutions of the Schrödinger equation in region 2.

- Because  $E > V_1, V_3$ , the states in regions 1 and 3 are free, meaning the particle's Hamiltonian has a continuous spectrum of energy eigenvalues. As a result, energy eigenvalues aren't particularly useful for characterizing the problem.

Instead, for unbound situations with a potential barrier, we describe the problem in terms of transmissivity  $T$  and reflectivity  $R$ , which describe the probabilities of the scattered particle passing through and reflecting from the barrier, respectively.

### Probability Current

- For scattering problems with  $T$  and  $R$ , we work in terms of probability current

$$j(x) = \frac{\hbar}{2mi} \left[ \psi^*(x) \psi'(x) - \psi'^*(x) \psi(x) \right] = \frac{\hbar}{m} \text{Im} \{ \psi^* \psi'(x) \},$$

where  $\psi^*$  and  $\psi'$  denote the complex conjugate and derivative of  $\psi$ , respectively.

- Substituting in the region 1 ansatz  $\psi_1 = A_1 e^{ik_1 x} + B_1 e^{-ik_1 x}$  gives the probability current in region 1:

$$\begin{aligned} j_1 &= \frac{\hbar}{m} \text{Im} \left\{ A_1 A_1^* i k_1 - B_1 B_1^* i k_1 + B_1^* A_1 i k_1 e^{2ik_1 x} - B_1 A_1^* i k_1 e^{-2ik_1 x} \right\} \\ &= \frac{\hbar k_1}{m} (A_1 A_1^* - B_1 B_1^*) \equiv v_1 (A_1 A_1^* - B_1 B_1^*) = v_1 (|A_1|^2 - |B_1|^2). \end{aligned}$$

Noting that  $\frac{\hbar k_1}{m}$  has units of velocity, we've defined the constant  $v_1 \equiv \frac{\hbar k_1}{m}$ .

The procedure for  $j_3$  in region 3 is analogous. The result is

$$j_3 = v_3 (B_3 B_3^* - A_3 A_3^*) = v_3 (|B_3|^2 - |A_3|^2) \quad \text{where} \quad v_3 \equiv \frac{\hbar k_3}{m}.$$

- Next, we run into a slight problem: the plane waves in regions 1 and 3 can't be normalized. They oscillate! Instead, we normalize  $\psi_1$  and  $\psi_3$  per unit "probability velocity". We redefine

$$\tilde{\psi}_1 = \frac{A_1}{\sqrt{v_1}} e^{ik_1 x} + \frac{B_1}{\sqrt{v_1}} e^{-ik_1 x} \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{\psi}_3 = \frac{A_3}{\sqrt{v_3}} e^{-ik_3 x} + \frac{B_3}{\sqrt{v_3}} e^{ik_3 x}.$$

The corresponding probability currents, using the normalized  $\tilde{\psi}_1$  and  $\tilde{\psi}_3$  are

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{j}_1(x) &= A_1^* A_1 - B_1^* B_1 = |A_1|^2 - |B_1|^2 \\ \tilde{j}_3(x) &= B_3^* B_3 - A_3^* A_3 = |B_3|^2 - |A_3|^2. \end{aligned}$$

As a general rule, we always normalize plane waves with the probability velocity  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{v}}$  where  $v = \frac{\hbar k}{m}$ .

- The next step in the scattering problem is formulating four boundary conditions on  $\psi$  requiring continuity and continuous differentiability at the two boundary regions between regions 1 and 2 and between regions 2 and 3.

We end up with 4 linearly independent equations for six unknown coefficients. Our plan is to eliminate  $C$  and  $D$  and express  $B_1$  and  $B_3$  in terms of  $A_1$  and  $A_3$ . The amplitudes  $A_1$  and  $A_3$  of the waves incident on the potential barrier thus parameterize our problem. Informally, all this means is that if we know the wavefunction of the incident particle (by specifying the incident amplitudes  $A_1, A_3$ ), we can solve the scattering problem by finding the reflected amplitudes  $B_1, B_3$ . In general, it is best practice to parameterize a scattering problem with the *incident* amplitudes  $A_1$  and  $A_3$ .

In any case, we end up with a matrix equation

$$\begin{bmatrix} B_1 \\ B_3 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{S} \begin{bmatrix} A_1 \\ A_3 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{or more concisely} \quad \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{S}\mathbf{A},$$

where  $\mathbf{S}$  is called the *scattering matrix*, in our case a  $2 \times 2$  matrix. By convention, we parameterize a  $2 \times 2$  scattering matrix in terms of the parameters  $r, \tilde{r}, t$  and  $\tilde{t}$ :

$$\mathbf{S} = \begin{bmatrix} r & \tilde{t} \\ t & \tilde{r} \end{bmatrix}.$$

### Probability Conservation

- Some identities:

$$T = |t|^2 \quad R = |r|^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{T} = |\tilde{t}|^2 \quad \tilde{R} = |\tilde{r}|^2.$$

The identities  $T + R = 1$  and  $\tilde{T} + \tilde{R} = 1$  imply probability conservation, i.e. the total incident and reflected probabilities sum to one.

- In general, the incident current is the sum of the two squares of the incidence amplitudes  $A_1$  and  $A_3$ , while the reflected current is the sum of the reflected amplitudes  $B_1$  and  $B_3$ , i.e.

$$j_{\text{in}} = |A_1|^2 + |A_3|^2 \quad \text{and} \quad j_{\text{out}} = |B_1|^2 + |B_3|^2.$$

In terms of the coefficient vector  $\mathbf{A}$ , the incident probability current is

$$j_{\text{in}} = A_1 A_1^* + A_3 A_3^* = [A_1^*, A_3^*] \begin{bmatrix} A_1 \\ A_3 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{A}^\dagger \mathbf{A}.$$

An analogous procedure with the reflected amplitudes gives

$$j_{\text{out}} = B_1 B_1^* + B_3 B_3^* = [B_1^*, B_3^*] \begin{bmatrix} B_1 \\ B_3 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{B}^\dagger \mathbf{B}.$$

- Conservation of probability requires  $j_{\text{in}} = j_{\text{out}}$  or  $\mathbf{A}^\dagger \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{B}^\dagger \mathbf{B}$ . Combining the scattering matrix equation  $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{S}\mathbf{A}$  with the requirement  $\mathbf{A}^\dagger \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{B}^\dagger \mathbf{B}$  implies

$$\mathbf{A}^\dagger \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{B}^\dagger \mathbf{B} = (\mathbf{A}^\dagger \mathbf{S}^\dagger)(\mathbf{S}\mathbf{A}) \implies \mathbf{S}^\dagger \mathbf{S} = \mathbf{I}.$$

In other words, the scattering matrix  $\mathbf{S}$  must be unitary to conserve probability in scattering problems.

## 2.4 Scattering From a Delta Potential

Analyze a quantum particle scattering off of a delta function potential.

- We consider a particle of energy  $E$  scattering off the potential  $V(x) = \lambda\delta(x)$ . We'll divide the problem into two separate cases. First, we'll assume the particle is incident on the potential barrier only from the left, so the incident amplitude vector reads  $\mathbf{A} = (1, 0)$ . In this case, the scattering matrix equation reads

$$\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{S}\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} r & \tilde{t} \\ t & \tilde{r} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} r \\ t \end{bmatrix}.$$

- Similarly, if we assume the particle is incident only from the right, i.e.  $\mathbf{A} = (0, 1)$ , the scattering equation reads

$$\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{S}\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} r & \tilde{t} \\ t & \tilde{r} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{t} \\ \tilde{r} \end{bmatrix}.$$

- First, for  $\mathbf{A} = (1, 0)$  and  $\mathbf{B} = (r, t)$ , the wave functions in region 1 and 3 are

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_1(x) &= \frac{A_1}{\sqrt{v}}e^{ikx} + \frac{B_1}{\sqrt{v}}e^{-ikx} = \frac{e^{ikx}}{\sqrt{v}} + \frac{r}{\sqrt{v}}e^{-ikx}, \\ \psi_3 &= \frac{A_3}{\sqrt{v}}e^{-ikx} + \frac{B_3}{\sqrt{v}}e^{ikx} = 0 + \frac{t}{\sqrt{v}}e^{ikx}, \end{aligned}$$

where  $k^2 = \frac{2mE}{\hbar^2}$ . Note that because the potential is the same on both sides of the delta function,  $k_1 = k_3 \equiv k$  and  $v_1 = v_3 \equiv v$ .

- On to boundary conditions. Continuity between regions 1 and 3 requires

$$\psi_1(0) = \psi_3(0) \implies 1 + r = t.$$

For the the boundary conditions on the derivative  $\psi'$ , we reuse the earlier differentiability condition  $\psi'(0_+) - \psi'(0_-) = \frac{2m\lambda\psi(0)}{\hbar^2}$  from the previous problem involving bound states in a delta potential. Changing the sign of  $\lambda$  because the delta function in a scattering problem points upward, and changing notation from  $\psi'_\pm$  to  $\psi'_{1,3}$  the differentiability condition becomes

$$\psi'_3(0) - \psi'_1(0) = \frac{2m\lambda}{\hbar^2}\psi(0) \implies ik(t + r - 1) = \frac{2m\lambda}{\hbar^2}t.$$

Substituting in the earlier continuity requirement  $t = 1 + r$  gives

$$2ikr = \frac{2m\lambda}{\hbar^2}(1 + r) \implies r = -\frac{i\alpha}{k + i\alpha} \quad \text{where} \quad \alpha = \frac{m\lambda}{\hbar^2}.$$

The expression for the parameter  $t$  is then

$$t = 1 + r = 1 - \frac{i\alpha}{k + i\alpha} = \frac{k}{k + i\alpha}.$$

- We would then find  $\tilde{r}$  and  $\tilde{t}$  using an analogous procedure with the incidence vector  $\mathbf{A} = (0, 1)$ . It turns out (exercise left to the reader) that the results are the same:

$$\tilde{r} = -\frac{i\alpha}{k + i\alpha} \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{t} = \frac{k}{k + i\alpha}.$$

The probability matrix can then be written

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{k + i\alpha} \begin{bmatrix} -i\alpha & k \\ k & -i\alpha \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{where} \quad \alpha = \frac{m\lambda}{\hbar^2}.$$

**On the Problem's Symmetry:** A few notes on why the scattering matrix for the delta potential has only two independent parameters, i.e. why  $\tilde{t} = t$  and  $\tilde{r} = r$ .

- We begin by noting that the wave functions  $\psi_{1,3}$  in regions 1 and 3 solve the stationary Schrödinger equation

$$H\psi = E\psi \quad \text{where} \quad H = -\frac{\hbar^2}{m} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + V(x).$$

We then take the Schrödinger equation's complex conjugate to get

$$H\psi^* = E\psi^*.$$

In other words, if  $\psi$  is a wave function for the energy eigenvalue  $E$ , then so is  $\psi^*$ . This holds in general for any real Hamiltonian.

- In our specific problem in regions 1 and 3, the conjugate wave function reads

$$\psi_1^* = \frac{A_1^*}{\sqrt{v}} e^{-ikx} + \frac{B_1^*}{\sqrt{v}} e^{ikx} \quad \text{and} \quad \psi_3^* = \frac{A_3^*}{\sqrt{v}} e^{ikx} + \frac{B_3^*}{\sqrt{v}} e^{ikx}.$$

Recall  $k_1 = k_3 = k$  and  $v_1 = v_3 = v$ .

- Conjugation effectively switches the role of the incident and reflected waves: the waves with  $B$  coefficients are now incident and waves with  $A$  coefficients reflected. The equation linking the incident and reflected waves becomes

$$\begin{bmatrix} A_1^* \\ A_3^* \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{S} \begin{bmatrix} B_1^* \\ B_3^* \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{or more concisely} \quad \mathbf{A}^* = \mathbf{S} \mathbf{B}^*.$$

Recall the original equation, before conjugation, was  $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{S} \mathbf{A}$  and note that the scattering matrix  $\mathbf{S}$  is the same, since the potential is invariant under conjugation.

- Remember probability conservation requires that  $\mathbf{S}$  be unitary, i.e.  $\mathbf{S}^\dagger \mathbf{S} = \mathbf{I}$ . With this in mind, multiply the original equation  $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{S} \mathbf{A}$  from the left by  $\mathbf{S}^\dagger$ , and then take the complex conjugate of the equation, which gives

$$\mathbf{S}^\dagger \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{A} \implies \mathbf{A}^* = \mathbf{S}^T \mathbf{B}^*.$$

Substituting the result  $\mathbf{A}^* = \mathbf{S}^T \mathbf{B}^*$  into the conjugate equation  $\mathbf{A}^* = \mathbf{S} \mathbf{B}^*$  gives

$$\mathbf{S}^T \mathbf{B}^* = \mathbf{S} \mathbf{B}^*,$$

meaning that  $\mathbf{S}$  is symmetric for scattering off a delta potential. This symmetry is the reason why  $t = \tilde{t}$  in the delta function scattering matrix. Formally, this is a consequence of the problem's Hamiltonian being invariant under time reversal.

- Next, why  $r = \tilde{r}$ . This is a consequence of the problem's reflection symmetry. Start again with the Schrödinger equation:

$$H\psi(x) = E\psi(x).$$

The parity transformation  $x \rightarrow -x$  (recall  $H$  is invariant under parity) gives:

$$H\psi(-x) = E\psi(-x).$$



The parity-transformed wave functions for regions 1 and 3 are

$$\psi_1(-x) = \frac{A_1}{\sqrt{v}}e^{-ikx} + \frac{B_1}{\sqrt{v}}e^{ikx} \quad \text{and} \quad \psi_3(-x) = \frac{A_3}{\sqrt{v}}e^{ikx} + \frac{B_3}{\sqrt{v}}e^{-ikx}.$$

The roles of the incident and reflected waves are mixed up under parity:  $\psi_1(-x)$  now refers to the region of  $x > 0$  (right of the delta function), and  $\psi_3(-x)$  to the region of  $x < 0$ . The equation linking the incident and reflected waves becomes

$$\begin{bmatrix} B_3 \\ B_1 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{S} \begin{bmatrix} A_3 \\ A_1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{after reflection}).$$

Recall the original equation, before parity transformation, was

$$\begin{bmatrix} B_1 \\ B_3 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{S} \begin{bmatrix} A_1 \\ A_3 \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{before reflection}).$$

- We can get the reflected equation from the original one by multiplying the original equation by the first Pauli spin matrix  $\sigma_x = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ . The reflected equation is

$$\sigma_x \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{S} \sigma_x \mathbf{A} \implies \mathbf{B} = \sigma_x \mathbf{S} \sigma_x \mathbf{A}.$$

Substituting the expression for  $\mathbf{B}$  into the original equation  $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{S} \mathbf{A}$  gives

$$\sigma_x \mathbf{S} \sigma_x \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{S} \mathbf{A} \implies \mathbf{S} = \sigma_x \mathbf{S} \sigma_x.$$

The relationship  $\mathbf{S} = \sigma_x \mathbf{S} \sigma_x$  holds in general for any even Hamiltonian. Applied to our parameterization of  $\mathbf{S}$ , we have

$$\mathbf{S} = \sigma_x \mathbf{S} \sigma_x \iff \begin{bmatrix} r & \tilde{t} \\ t & \tilde{r} \end{bmatrix} = \sigma_x \begin{bmatrix} r & \tilde{t} \\ t & \tilde{r} \end{bmatrix} \sigma_x = \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{r} & t \\ \tilde{t} & r \end{bmatrix}.$$

The result is  $r = \tilde{r}$  and  $t = \tilde{t}$ . This accounts for both of the symmetries in our delta function scattering matrix! So invariance under parity transformation is a powerful symmetry: it reduces the number of independent elements in the scattering matrix by two, even under in the absence of time reversal symmetry.

### 3 Third Exercise Set

#### 3.1 Theory: Uncertainty Product of Observable Quantities

- We are interested in finding an expression for the uncertainty in the product  $\Delta A \Delta B$  of two arbitrary observable quantities  $A$  and  $B$ . We start by assigning both  $A$  and  $B$  a corresponding Hermitian operator (Hermitian because  $A$  and  $B$  are observable). The operators are

$$A = A^\dagger \quad \text{and} \quad B = B^\dagger.$$

- By definition, the uncertainty in  $A$  is

$$(\Delta A)^2 = \langle A^2 \rangle - \langle A \rangle^2 = \langle (A - \langle A \rangle) \rangle \equiv \langle \tilde{A}^2 \rangle,$$

where we've defined  $\tilde{A} = A - \langle A \rangle I$ . Here  $\langle A \rangle$  is a scalar and  $I$  is the identity operator.

- First, the definition of an operator's expectation value, in both coordinate and bracket notation, is

$$\langle A \rangle = \int \psi^* A \psi \, dx \equiv \langle \psi | A | \psi \rangle = \langle \psi | A \psi \rangle.$$

Because  $A$  is Hermitian,  $\langle \psi | A \psi \rangle = \langle A \psi | \psi \rangle$ . This is a special case of the more general adjoint relationship  $\langle A \psi | \psi \rangle = \langle \psi | A^* \psi \rangle$  with  $A = A^*$  because  $A$  is Hermitian.

- The expectation value of a Hermitian operator is real. The classic proof reads

$$\langle A \rangle \equiv \langle \psi | A \psi \rangle = \langle A^* \psi | \psi \rangle = \langle A \psi | \psi \rangle = \langle \psi | A \psi \rangle^* \equiv \langle A \rangle^* \implies \langle A \rangle \in \mathbb{R}.$$

- In general, the sum of two Hermitian operators  $A = A^\dagger$  and  $B = B^\dagger$  is

$$(A + B)^\dagger = A^\dagger + B^\dagger = A + B.$$

So the sum of two Hermitian operators is a Hermitian operator. If we return to  $\tilde{A} = A - \langle A \rangle I$  it follows that  $\tilde{A}^\dagger = \tilde{A}$  since both  $A$  and  $I$  are Hermitian.

- We return to the product  $\Delta A \Delta B$ . First, we square everything, since uncertainty is expressed as  $(\Delta A)^2$ .

$$\begin{aligned} (\Delta A \Delta B)^2 &= \langle \tilde{A}^2 \rangle \langle \tilde{B}^2 \rangle = \langle \psi | \tilde{A}^2 | \psi \rangle \langle \psi | \tilde{B}^2 | \psi \rangle = \langle \tilde{A} \psi | \tilde{A} \psi \rangle \langle \tilde{B} \psi | \tilde{B} \psi \rangle \\ &= \|\tilde{A} \psi\|^2 \|\tilde{B} \psi\|^2. \end{aligned}$$

The last equality occurs in the Cauchy-Schwartz inequality:

$$\|\tilde{A} \psi\|^2 \|\tilde{B} \psi\|^2 \geq |\langle \tilde{A} \psi | \tilde{B} \psi \rangle|^2 = |\langle \psi | \tilde{A} \tilde{B} \psi \rangle|^2.$$

- Next, some more manipulations of the last result:

$$\left| \langle \psi | \tilde{A} \tilde{B} | \psi \rangle \right|^2 = \left| \langle \psi | \frac{1}{2} (\tilde{A} \tilde{B} - \tilde{B} \tilde{A} + \tilde{A} \tilde{B} + \tilde{B} \tilde{A}) | \psi \rangle \right|^2.$$

We introduce two quantities: the commutator and anti-commutator. They're written

$$[\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}] = \tilde{A} \tilde{B} - \tilde{B} \tilde{A} \quad \text{and} \quad \{\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}\} = \tilde{A} \tilde{B} + \tilde{B} \tilde{A}.$$

### Intermezzo: Some Properties of Commutators

- The anti-commutator of two Hermitian operators is a Hermitian operator

$$\begin{aligned} \{A, B\}^\dagger &= (AB + BA)^\dagger = (AB)^\dagger + (BA)^\dagger = B^\dagger A^\dagger + A^\dagger B^\dagger \\ &= AB + BA = \{A, B\}. \end{aligned}$$

- The commutator of two Hermitian operators is anti-Hermitian

$$\begin{aligned} [A, B]^\dagger &= (AB - BA)^\dagger = (AB)^\dagger - (BA)^\dagger = B^\dagger A^\dagger - A^\dagger B^\dagger \\ &= -(AB - BA) = -[A, B]. \end{aligned}$$

- Finally, the expectation value of an anti-Hermitian operator  $A^\dagger = -A$  is

$$\langle A \rangle = \langle \psi | A \psi \rangle = \langle A^* \psi | \psi \rangle = \langle -A \psi | \psi \rangle = -\langle A \psi | \psi \rangle = -\langle \psi | A \psi \rangle^* = -\langle A \rangle^*.$$

The result implies  $\langle A \rangle$  is a purely imaginary number if  $A$  is anti-Hermitian.

## Back to the Uncertainty Principle

- Specifically, back to where we left off with

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\Delta A \Delta B)^2 &= \dots = \|\tilde{A}\psi\|^2 \|\tilde{B}\psi\|^2 \geq |\langle \tilde{A}\psi | \tilde{B}\psi \rangle|^2 = \dots \\
 &= \left| \langle \psi | \frac{1}{2} [\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}] + \frac{1}{2} \{ \tilde{A}, \tilde{B} \} | \psi \rangle \right|^2 = \left| \langle \frac{1}{2} [\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}] + \frac{1}{2} \{ \tilde{A}, \tilde{B} \} \rangle \right|^2 \\
 &= \frac{1}{4} \left( \left| \langle [\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}] \rangle \right|^2 + \left| \langle \{ \tilde{A}, \tilde{B} \} \rangle \right|^2 \right).
 \end{aligned}$$

In last parentheses we have a sum of two positive quantities, so we can drop the anti-commutator if we write

$$\frac{1}{4} \left( \left| \langle [\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}] \rangle \right|^2 + \left| \langle \{ \tilde{A}, \tilde{B} \} \rangle \right|^2 \right) \geq \frac{1}{4} \left| \langle [\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}] \rangle \right|^2 = \left( \frac{1}{2} \left| \langle [A, B] \rangle \right| \right)^2.$$

The last equality uses the identity  $[\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}] = [A, B]$ , which follows from some basic algebra and the definitions  $\tilde{A} = A - \langle A \rangle I$  and  $\tilde{B} = B - \langle B \rangle I$ :

$$[\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}] = [A - \langle A \rangle I, B - \langle B \rangle I] = \dots = AB - BA = [A, B].$$

- Here's the entire derivation so far in one place. Note the two inequalities.

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\Delta A \Delta B)^2 &= \langle \tilde{A}^2 \rangle \langle \tilde{B}^2 \rangle = \langle \psi | \tilde{A}^2 | \psi \rangle \langle \psi | \tilde{B}^2 | \psi \rangle = \langle \tilde{A}\psi | \tilde{A}\psi \rangle \langle \tilde{B}\psi | \tilde{B}\psi \rangle \\
 &= \|\tilde{A}\psi\|^2 \|\tilde{B}\psi\|^2 \geq |\langle \tilde{A}\psi | \tilde{B}\psi \rangle|^2 = |\langle \psi | \tilde{A}\tilde{B}\psi \rangle|^2 \\
 &= \left| \langle \psi | \frac{1}{2} (\tilde{A}\tilde{B} - \tilde{B}\tilde{A} + \tilde{A}\tilde{B} + \tilde{B}\tilde{A}) | \psi \rangle \right|^2 = \left| \langle \psi | \frac{1}{2} [\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}] + \frac{1}{2} \{ \tilde{A}, \tilde{B} \} | \psi \rangle \right|^2 \\
 &= \left| \langle \frac{1}{2} [\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}] + \frac{1}{2} \{ \tilde{A}, \tilde{B} \} \rangle \right|^2 = \frac{1}{4} \left( \left| \langle [\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}] \rangle \right|^2 + \left| \langle \{ \tilde{A}, \tilde{B} \} \rangle \right|^2 \right) \\
 &\geq \frac{1}{4} \left| \langle [A, B] \rangle \right|^2 = \left( \frac{1}{2} \left| \langle [A, B] \rangle \right| \right)^2.
 \end{aligned}$$

- Now we apply the result specifically to  $x$  and  $p$ , where  $x = x$ ,  $p = -i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x}$  and  $[x, p] = i\hbar$ . The result is

$$(\Delta x \Delta p)^2 \geq \left( \frac{1}{2} \left| \langle [x, p] \rangle \right| \right)^2 = \left( \frac{1}{2} \left| \langle i\hbar \rangle \right| \right)^2 = \left( \frac{1}{2} |i\hbar| \right)^2 = \left( \frac{\hbar}{2} \right)^2 \implies \Delta x \Delta p \geq \frac{\hbar}{2}.$$

## 3.2 Wave Function Minimizing the Uncertainty Product

Find all wave functions with the minimum position-momentum uncertainty product allowed by the Heisenberg uncertainty principle, i.e. find all wave functions for which  $\Delta x \Delta p = \frac{\hbar}{2}$ .

- To solve this problem, we need a wavefunction for which both inequalities in the above theory section are strict equalities. First, the Cauchy-Schwartz inequality is an equality for two linearly dependent vectors.

$$\|\tilde{A}\psi\|^2 \|\tilde{B}\psi\|^2 = |\langle \tilde{A}\psi | \tilde{B}\psi \rangle|^2 \quad \text{if} \quad \tilde{A}\psi = \alpha \tilde{B}\psi, \quad \alpha \in \mathbb{C}.$$

The second inequality is an equality if

$$\langle \{ \tilde{A}, \tilde{B} \} \rangle = 0.$$

- We have two conditions:

$$|\tilde{A}\psi\rangle = \alpha|\tilde{B}\psi\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \langle\{\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}\}\rangle = 0.$$

We start with the second condition and perform some manipulations...

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &\equiv \langle\{\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}\}\rangle = \langle\psi|\tilde{A}\tilde{B} + \tilde{B}\tilde{A}|\psi\rangle = \langle\psi|\tilde{A}\tilde{B}|\psi\rangle + \langle\psi|\tilde{B}\tilde{A}|\psi\rangle \\ &= \langle\tilde{A}\psi|\tilde{B}\psi\rangle + \langle\tilde{B}\psi|\tilde{A}\psi\rangle = 0. \end{aligned}$$

We then substitute in the Cauchy-Schwartz condition to get

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \langle\tilde{A}\psi|\tilde{B}\psi\rangle + \langle\tilde{B}\psi|\tilde{A}\psi\rangle = \langle\alpha\tilde{B}\psi|\tilde{B}\psi\rangle + \langle\tilde{B}\psi|\alpha\tilde{B}\psi\rangle \\ &= \alpha^*\langle\tilde{B}\psi|\tilde{B}\psi\rangle + \alpha\langle\tilde{B}\psi|\tilde{B}\psi\rangle = (\alpha^* + \alpha)\langle\tilde{B}\psi|\tilde{B}\psi\rangle = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Mathematically, the equality holds if either of the two product terms equal zero. But the bra-ket term is  $\langle\tilde{B}\psi|\tilde{B}\psi\rangle = \langle\tilde{B}^2\rangle = (\Delta B)^2$ , and this term being zero would imply zero uncertainty in  $B$ , which implies infinite uncertainty in  $A$ . We reject this option as non-physical, so we're left with  $(\alpha^* + \alpha) = 0$ , meaning  $\alpha$  is a purely imaginary number. To make this requirement explicit, we write  $\alpha = ic$  where  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ . The Cauchy-Schwartz condition then reads

$$|\tilde{A}\psi\rangle = ic|\tilde{B}\psi\rangle, \quad c \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Substituting in the definition  $\tilde{A} = A - \langle A \rangle I$  gives

$$|A\psi\rangle - \langle A \rangle |\psi\rangle = ic|B\psi\rangle - ic\langle B \rangle |\psi\rangle.$$

- Any solutions  $\psi$  to this equation will satisfy the equality

$$\Delta A \Delta B = \frac{1}{2} |\langle[A, B]\rangle|.$$

For the specific case  $A \rightarrow x$  and  $B \rightarrow p$  where  $p \rightarrow -i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial x}$  and  $|\psi\rangle = \psi(x)$ , the equation reads

$$x\psi - \langle x \rangle \psi = \hbar c \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} - ic \langle p \rangle \psi.$$

## 4 Fourth Exercise Set

### 4.1 Wave Function Minimizing the Uncertainty Product (continued)

*Continued from the previous exercise set...*

- *Review of last exercise set:* We started with two Hermitian operators  $A$  and  $B$  and showed

$$\Delta A \Delta B \geq \frac{1}{2} |\langle[A, B]\rangle|.$$

An equality = replaces the inequality  $\geq$  if

$$\langle\{\tilde{A}, \tilde{B}\}\rangle = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{A}|\psi\rangle = \alpha\tilde{B}|\psi\rangle,$$

where  $\tilde{A} = A - \langle A \rangle$ ,  $\tilde{B} = B - \langle B \rangle$  and  $\alpha = ic$  where  $c \in \mathbb{R}$  is real constant.

In the concrete momentum-position case, the minimum uncertainty condition reads

$$x\psi(x) - \langle x \rangle \psi = \hbar c \psi'(x) - ic \langle p \rangle \psi.$$

The wave functions  $\psi$  solving this equation will minimize the product  $\Delta x \Delta p$ .

- Rearranging the equation for  $\psi'$  gives

$$\psi'(x) = \left( \frac{x - \langle x \rangle}{c\hbar} + \frac{i \langle p \rangle}{\hbar} \right) \psi(x).$$

Next, we separate variables and integrate:

$$\frac{d\psi}{\psi} = \frac{x - \langle x \rangle}{c\hbar} + \frac{i \langle p \rangle}{\hbar} \implies \ln \psi = \frac{(x - \langle x \rangle)^2}{2c\hbar} + \frac{i \langle p \rangle}{\hbar} x + \lambda.$$

Solving for  $x$  gives

$$\psi(x) = e^\lambda \exp\left(\frac{(x - \langle x \rangle)^2}{2c\hbar}\right) e^{-i \frac{\langle p \rangle}{\hbar} x}.$$

- Now we just have to normalize the wavefunction:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\psi(x)|^2 dx \equiv 1 = |e^\lambda|^2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp\left(\frac{(x - \langle x \rangle)^2}{2c\hbar}\right) dx.$$

Note that  $c$  must be negative for the integral to converge. To make this requirement explicit, we'll write

$$1 \equiv |e^\lambda|^2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp\left(-\frac{(x - \langle x \rangle)^2}{2\sigma^2}\right) dx,$$

where we introduce  $\sigma$  to match the form of a Gauss bell curve, which then implies

$$|e^\lambda|^2 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}}.$$

The final result for  $\psi(x)$  is

$$\psi(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt[4]{2\pi\sigma^2}} \exp\left(\frac{(x - \langle x \rangle)^2}{4\sigma^2}\right) e^{-i \frac{\langle p \rangle}{\hbar} x}.$$

These functions are called *Gaussian wave packets*. This concludes the problem: the functions minimizing the product  $\Delta x \Delta p$  are Gaussian wave packets.

As a final note, the  $e^{-i \frac{\langle p \rangle}{\hbar} x}$  term is a plane wave, with wavelength

$$\frac{\langle p \rangle}{\hbar} \lambda = 2\pi \implies \lambda = \frac{h}{\langle p \rangle}.$$

## 4.2 Theory: Time Evolution of a Wave Function

- We find the time evolution of a wave function by solving the Schrödinger equation

$$H\psi(x, t) = i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \psi(x, t).$$

One option is to solve the stationary Schrödinger equation

$$H\psi_n(x) = E_n\psi_n(x),$$

and expand the initial state  $\psi(x, 0)$  in terms of the basis functions  $\psi_n$  solving the stationary Schrödinger equation, i.e. writing  $\psi(x, 0)$  as

$$\psi(x, 0) = \sum_n c_n \psi_n(x).$$

- We then find the time evolution by adding a time-dependent phase factor to the eigenfunction expansion

$$\psi(x, t) = \sum_n c_n \psi_n(x) e^{-i \frac{E_n}{\hbar} t}.$$

In Dirac bra-ket notation, the stationary Schrödinger equation and eigenfunction expansion of the initial state read

$$H |n\rangle = E_n |n\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad |\psi, 0\rangle = \sum_n c_n |n\rangle,$$

and the corresponding time evolution reads

$$|\psi, t\rangle = \sum_n c_n e^{-i \frac{E_n}{\hbar} t} |n\rangle.$$

The time evolution depends on the potential  $V(x)$  we're working in.

### 4.3 Theory: Time-Dependent Expectation Values and Operators

- Consider an operator  $A$ . A function of the operator is defined in terms of the function's Taylor series:

$$f(A) = \sum_n \frac{1}{\sqrt{n!}} f^{(n)}(A) A^n.$$

- Next, consider an arbitrary observable  $A = A^\dagger$ . We then ask what is the expectation value  $\langle A, t \rangle$  of  $A$  at time  $t$ ? We can find the wave function  $|\psi, t\rangle$  with

$$|\psi, t\rangle = \sum_n c_n e^{-i \frac{E_n}{\hbar} t} |n\rangle.$$

We'll now show that we get the same result by acting on the initial state  $|\psi, 0\rangle$  with the time evolution operator, i.e. we will prove the equality

$$|\psi, t\rangle \equiv \sum_n c_n e^{-i \frac{E_n}{\hbar} t} |n\rangle = e^{-i \frac{H}{\hbar} t} |\psi, 0\rangle.$$

- To show this, we first expand  $|\psi, 0\rangle$  in terms of its eigenstates and bring the operator inside the sum.

$$e^{-i \frac{H}{\hbar} t} |\psi, 0\rangle = e^{-i \frac{H}{\hbar} t} \sum_n c_n |n\rangle = \sum_n c_n e^{-i \frac{H}{\hbar} t} |n\rangle.$$

We write the exponent of the Hamiltonian operator in terms of the exponential function's Taylor series:

$$e^{-i \frac{H}{\hbar} t} |\psi, 0\rangle = \sum_n c_n \left[ \sum_m \frac{1}{m!} \left( -\frac{it}{\hbar} \right)^m H^m |n\rangle \right].$$

- First, we'll tackle the term  $H^m |n\rangle$ , recalling that  $|n\rangle$  are eigenfunctions of  $H$ :

$$H^m |n\rangle = H^{m-1} (H |n\rangle) = H^{m-1} (E_n |n\rangle) = \dots = E_n^m |n\rangle.$$

This step is important—it converts the operator  $H$  to the scalar values  $E_n$ . We then have

$$e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t}|\psi, 0\rangle = \sum_n c_n \left[ \sum_m \frac{1}{m!} \left( -\frac{it}{\hbar} \right)^m E_n^m \right] |n\rangle = \sum_n c_n e^{-i\frac{E_n}{\hbar}t} |n\rangle.$$

This completes the proof that

$$|\psi, t\rangle = \sum_n c_n e^{-i\frac{E_n}{\hbar}t} |n\rangle = e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} |\psi, 0\rangle.$$

In other words, instead of finding a time evolution by expanding an initial state  $|\psi, 0\rangle$  in terms of basis functions, we can act directly on the initial state with the time evolution operator.

### Time-Dependent Expectation Values

- Next, we return to the expectation value  $\langle A, t \rangle$ :

$$\langle A, t \rangle \equiv \langle \psi, t | A | \psi, t \rangle.$$

We've just shown the ket term can be found with the time evolution operator

$$|\psi, t\rangle = e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} |\psi, 0\rangle.$$

We find the bra term by taking the complex conjugate of the ket term:

$$\langle \psi, t | = \langle \psi, 0 | \left( e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \right)^\dagger = \langle \psi, 0 | e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t}.$$

Note that the  $|\psi, 0\rangle$  ket term is reversed under complex conjugation! We then have

$$\langle A, t \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} A e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} |\psi, 0\rangle \equiv \langle \psi, 0 | A(t) |\psi, 0\rangle,$$

where we've defined  $A(t) = e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} A e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t}$  for shorthand.

- The above result is useful: we have a new way to find a time-dependent expectation value. If we are given an initial state  $|\psi, 0\rangle$ , we can use the time evolution operator to get

$$\langle A, t \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} A e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} |\psi, 0\rangle \equiv \langle \psi, 0 |.$$

In other words, we don't need to find the time evolution of the wave function  $|\psi, t\rangle$ . This is convenient, since finding  $|\psi, t\rangle$  is often tedious.

- Finally, some vocabulary. Finding  $\langle A, t \rangle$  via time evolution of the wave function, i.e.

$$\langle A, t \rangle = \langle \psi, t | A | \psi, t \rangle,$$

is called the *Schrödinger approach*. Finding  $\langle A, t \rangle$  via time evolution of the  $A$  operator, i.e.

$$\langle A, t \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} A e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} |\psi, 0\rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | A(t) |\psi, 0\rangle,$$

is called the *Heisenberg approach*.

### Theory: Time Evolution of an Operator

- Next, we ask how to find the time evolution  $A(t)$  of an operator  $A$ ? To do this, we solve the differential equation

$$\frac{d}{dt}A(t) = \frac{d}{dt} \left[ e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} A e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \right] = \left( \frac{i}{\hbar} H \right) e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} A e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} + e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} A \left( -i\frac{H}{\hbar} e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \right).$$

This is found with the Taylor series definition of an operator  $A$ . In both terms, we have the product of the Hamiltonian  $H$  with the time evolution operator. These operators commute, so we can switch their order of multiplication and factor to get

$$\frac{d}{dt}A(t) = e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \left( \frac{i}{\hbar} H A - \frac{i}{\hbar} A H \right) e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} = e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \frac{i}{\hbar} [H, A] e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \equiv \frac{i}{\hbar} [H, A](t).$$

We thus find  $A(t)$  by solving the differential equation

$$\frac{d}{dt}A(t) = \frac{i}{\hbar} [H, A](t).$$

- One more useful identity: consider two operators  $A$  and  $B$ . We're interested in the time evolution of their product  $AB$ :

$$\begin{aligned} (AB)(t) &= e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} A B e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} = e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} A I B e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \\ &= e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} A e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} B e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} = A(t) B(t). \end{aligned}$$

#### 4.4 Time Evolution of the Gaussian Wave Packet

Given a Gaussian wave function  $\psi(x, 0)$  and the time-independent Hamiltonian  $H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + V(x)$ , find the initial wavefunction's time evolution  $\psi(x, t)$ .

- We'll work in the potential  $V(x) = 0$ . Because the basis functions of a free particle are continuous, and  $n$  is traditionally used to index discrete quantities, we'll index the basis functions with  $k$ . For a particle in a constant potential, the eigenfunctions are plane waves. We have

$$\psi_k(x) = \frac{e^{ikx}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \quad \text{and} \quad E_k = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}.$$

Note the normalization of the plane wave with  $\sqrt{2\pi}$ . The factor  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}$  is chosen so that a product of two basis functions produces a delta function:

$$\langle k | \tilde{k} \rangle \equiv \int \psi_k^*(x) \psi_{\tilde{k}}(x) dx = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int e^{i(\tilde{k}-k)x} dx \equiv \delta(\tilde{k} - k).$$

- First, an overview: To perform the time evolution, we first expand the initial state  $\psi(x, 0)$  in terms of the basis functions  $\psi_k$

$$\psi(x, 0) = \int c(k) \frac{e^{ikx}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} dk.$$

Note that we use integration instead of summation because the basis functions are continuous and not discrete. The above expansion is a Fourier transform of  $c(k)$  from the  $k$  to the  $x$  domain, so  $c(k)$  is found with the inverse Fourier transform

$$c(k) = \int \psi(x, 0) \frac{e^{-ikx}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} dx.$$



We would then find the time evolution with

$$\psi(x, t) = \int c(k) e^{-i \frac{E_k}{\hbar} t} \frac{e^{ikx}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} dk.$$

Again, integration replaces summation.

- In the end, we'll be more interested in the observables  $x$  and  $p$  than the actual wave function. For example the expectation values of  $x$  and  $p$  at time  $t$ , written

$$\langle x, t \rangle \equiv \langle \psi, t | x | \psi, t \rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \langle p, t \rangle \equiv \langle \psi, t | p | \psi, t \rangle.$$

Likewise, we'll be interested in the uncertainties

$$\Delta x(t) = \sqrt{\langle x^2, t \rangle - \langle x, t \rangle^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta p(t) = \sqrt{\langle p^2, t \rangle - \langle p, t \rangle^2}.$$

*Note:* Directly performing the above eigenfunction expansion and time evolution by solving the integrals is a tedious mathematical exercise. We'll take a slight detour, and introduce some machinery that solves the problem in a more physically elegant way.

### Theory: Commutator Properties

- First, a distributive property:  $[AB, C] = A[B, C] + [A, C]B$ .
- And second:  $[\lambda A, B] = \lambda[A, B]$ .
- And finally:  $[B, A] = -[A, B]$ .

### Back to the Time Evolution of the Gaussian Wave Packet

- We now have the formalism we need to easily find the expectation values

$$\langle x, t \rangle \equiv \langle \psi, t | x | \psi, t \rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \langle p, t \rangle \equiv \langle \psi, t | p | \psi, t \rangle$$

for a Gaussian wave packet with the simple Hamiltonian  $H = \frac{p^2}{2m}$ . Using the Heisenberg approach, we'll first find the time evolution of the operators  $x$  and  $p$ , then find the expectation values with

$$\langle A, t \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | A(t) | \psi, 0 \rangle.$$

- First, the equation for the operator  $x(t)$ :

$$\frac{d}{dt} x(t) = \frac{i}{\hbar} [H, x](t) = \frac{i}{\hbar} \left[ \frac{p^2}{2m}, x \right] (t).$$

Writing  $p^2 = pp$ , applying basic commutator properties and recalling the result  $[x, p] = i\hbar$  gives

$$\frac{d}{dt} x(t) = \frac{i}{2m\hbar} (p[p, x] + [p, x]p) (t) = \frac{i}{2m\hbar} (-p\hbar - i\hbar p) (t) = \frac{p(t)}{m}.$$

Second, the differential for the operator  $p(t)$ , noting that  $[p^2, p] = 0$ , is

$$\frac{d}{dt} p(t) = \frac{i}{\hbar} [H, p] (t) = \frac{i}{\hbar} \left[ \frac{p^2}{2m}, p \right] (t) = 0.$$

The general solution is a constant:  $p(t) = p_0$ . We need an initial condition to find a solution specific to our problem, which we get from general expression

$$A(t)|_{t=0} = e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar} \cdot 0} A e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar} \cdot 0} = A.$$

In our case,  $p(0) = p$ , which implies  $p(t) = p$ . In other words, the momentum operator stays the same with time; it is always the usual

$$p = -i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x}$$

for all time  $t$ . Next, with  $p(t)$  known, we solve the equation for  $x(t)$ :

$$\frac{d}{dx} = \frac{p(t)}{m} = \frac{p}{m} \implies x(t) = \frac{p}{m}t + x_0.$$

With the initial condition  $x(0) = x$ , we now have the expression for the time evolution of the operator  $x(t)$

$$x(t) = \frac{p}{m}t + x \rightarrow -i\frac{\hbar}{m}t \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + x.$$

- With  $x(t)$  and  $p(t)$  known, we can find the expectation values using

$$\langle A, t \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | A(t) | \psi, 0 \rangle.$$

We start with momentum:

$$\langle p, t \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | p(t) | \psi, 0 \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | p | \psi, 0 \rangle \equiv \langle p, 0 \rangle = \langle p \rangle.$$

In other words, because  $p(t) = p$  is constant, we can just find the initial expectation value  $\langle p, 0 \rangle$  using the initial wave function. This is the same  $\langle p \rangle$  term in the exponent of the plane wave term in the Gaussian wave packet.

Next, the expectation value of position. Inserting  $x(t)$  and splitting the bra-ket into two parts gives

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x, t \rangle &= \langle \psi, 0 | x(t) | \psi, 0 \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | \frac{p}{m}t + x | \psi, 0 \rangle \\ &= \frac{t}{m} \langle \psi, 0 | p | \psi, 0 \rangle + \langle \psi, 0 | x | \psi, 0 \rangle = \frac{t}{m} \langle p, 0 \rangle + \langle x, 0 \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

These are the same  $\langle x \rangle$  and  $\langle p \rangle$  term in the exponents of the initial the Gaussian wave packet.

- Next, we want to find the uncertainties

$$\Delta x(t) = \sqrt{\langle x^2, t \rangle - \langle x, t \rangle^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta p(t) = \sqrt{\langle p^2, t \rangle - \langle p, t \rangle^2}.$$

It remains to find the the time evolution of the operators  $p^2$  and  $x^2$  and then the expectation values  $\langle p^2, t \rangle$  and  $\langle x^2, t \rangle$ . We start with the operator  $p^2(t)$ .

$$\langle p^2, t \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | p^2(t) | \psi, 0 \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | [p(t)]^2 | \psi, 0 \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | p^2 | \psi, 0 \rangle.$$

In other words,  $\langle p^2, t \rangle$  is the expectation value of the time-independent operator  $p^2$ .

Next, the evolution of  $x(t)$ . Using  $x^2(t) = [x(t)]^2$ , substituting in the definition of  $x(t)$ , and splitting up the expectation value into three terms gives

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x^2, t \rangle &= \langle \psi, 0 | x^2(t) | \psi, 0 \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | [x(t)]^2 | \psi, 0 \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | \left( \frac{p}{m}t + x \right)^2 | \psi, 0 \rangle \\ &= \langle \psi, 0 | \left( \frac{p^2 t^2}{m^2} + \frac{t}{m}(px + xp) + x^2 \right) | \psi, 0 \rangle \\ &= \frac{t^2}{m^2} \langle \psi, 0 | p^2 | \psi, 0 \rangle + \frac{t}{m} \langle \psi, 0 | px + xp | \psi, 0 \rangle + \langle \psi, 0 | x^2 | \psi, 0 \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

We've now succeeded in expressing the time-dependent expectation values of  $x, x^2, p$  and  $p^2$  in terms of quantities that appear in the initial state, namely the exponent parameters  $\langle x \rangle$  and  $\langle p \rangle$ .

- From the beginning of this problem, recall the initial wave function is

$$\psi(x, 0) = \frac{1}{\sqrt[4]{2\pi\sigma^2}} \exp\left(\frac{(x - \langle x \rangle)^2}{4\sigma^2}\right) e^{-i\frac{\langle p \rangle}{\hbar}x}.$$

The associated probability density is

$$\rho(x, t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}} \exp\left(\frac{(x - \langle x \rangle)^2}{2\sigma^2}\right).$$

The expectation values of  $x$  and  $p$  are simply

$$\langle \psi, 0 | x | \psi, 0 \rangle = \langle x \rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \langle \psi, 0 | p | \psi, 0 \rangle = \langle p \rangle.$$

By definition, the initial uncertainty in  $x$  is

$$\Delta x(0) = \sqrt{\langle x^2, 0 \rangle - \langle x, 0 \rangle^2}.$$

There is a shortcut: for a Gaussian wave packet, the uncertainty is simply the wave packet's standard deviation  $\sigma$ . We can take advantage of this relationship to easily find  $\langle x^2, 0 \rangle$ :

$$\Delta x(0) = \sqrt{\langle x^2, 0 \rangle - \langle x, 0 \rangle^2} = \sigma \implies \langle x^2, 0 \rangle = \sigma^2 + \langle x, 0 \rangle^2.$$

- Another shortcut: instead of the definition, we find the uncertainty in  $p$  using the uncertainty principle, which for a Gaussian wave packet is the equality

$$\Delta x \Delta p = \frac{\hbar}{2} \implies \Delta p(0) = \frac{\hbar}{2\Delta x(0)} = \frac{\hbar}{2\sigma}.$$

With  $\Delta p(0)$  in hand, we can find  $\langle p^2, 0 \rangle$  with

$$\Delta p(0) = \sqrt{\langle p^2, 0 \rangle - \langle p, 0 \rangle^2} = \frac{\hbar}{2\sigma} \implies \langle p^2, 0 \rangle = \frac{\hbar^2}{4\sigma^2} + \langle p, 0 \rangle^2.$$

- The last piece needed to find  $\langle x^2, t \rangle$  is the quantity  $\langle \psi, 0 | px + xp | \psi, 0 \rangle$ . To find this, we'll use the relationship  $px = p^\dagger x^\dagger = (xp)^\dagger$ . In general,

$$\langle A^\dagger \rangle = \langle \psi | A^\dagger \psi \rangle = \langle A \psi | \psi \rangle = \langle \psi | A \psi \rangle^* = \langle A \rangle^*,$$

which implies  $\langle A + A^\dagger \rangle = \langle A \rangle + \langle A \rangle^* = 2 \operatorname{Re} \langle A \rangle$ . The expression  $\langle \psi, 0 | px + xp | \psi, 0 \rangle$  then simplifies to

$$\langle \psi, 0 | px + xp | \psi, 0 \rangle = 2 \operatorname{Re} \langle \psi, 0 | xp | \psi, 0 \rangle.$$

*We ran out of time at this point. The problem is completed in the next exercise set.*

## 5 Fifth Exercise Set

### 5.1 Time Evolution of a Gaussian Wave Packet (continued)

- In the last exercise set, we wanted to find the uncertainties

$$\Delta x(t) = \sqrt{\langle x^2, t \rangle - \langle x, t \rangle^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta p(t) = \sqrt{\langle p^2, t \rangle - \langle p, t \rangle^2}.$$

We approached finding the time evolution of the operators  $x(t)$  and  $p(t)$  using the Heisenberg approach. We left off with the following operator expressions:

$$p(t) = p \quad \text{and} \quad x(t) = \frac{pt}{m} + x.$$

For expected momentum values, we found

$$\langle p, t \rangle = \langle p, 0 \rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \langle p^2, t \rangle = \langle p^2, 0 \rangle.$$

For expected position values, we found

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x, t \rangle &= \frac{t}{m} \langle p, 0 \rangle + \langle x, 0 \rangle \\ \langle x^2, t \rangle &= \frac{t^2}{m^2} \langle \psi, 0 | p^2 | \psi, 0 \rangle + \frac{t}{m} \langle \psi, 0 | px + xp | \psi, 0 \rangle + \langle \psi, 0 | x^2 | \psi, 0 \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

We found nearly all of the initial expectation values in terms of the parameters  $\langle x \rangle$ ,  $\langle p \rangle$  and  $\sigma$  in the wave packet. The result were:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle p, 0 \rangle &= \langle p \rangle & \langle x, 0 \rangle &= \langle x \rangle \\ \langle x^2, 0 \rangle &= \sigma^2 + \langle x \rangle^2 & \langle p^2, 0 \rangle &= \left( \frac{\hbar}{2\sigma} \right)^2 + \langle p \rangle^2. \end{aligned}$$

The only remaining expectation value is  $\langle px + xp, 0 \rangle$ , which we showed to be

$$\langle xp + px, 0 \rangle = 2 \operatorname{Re} [\langle xp, 0 \rangle].$$

We find the expectation value by definition, using the wave function:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle xp + px, 0 \rangle &= 2 \operatorname{Re} [\langle xp, 0 \rangle] = 2 \operatorname{Re} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi^*(x, 0) x \left[ -i\hbar \frac{d}{dx} \right] \psi(x, 0) dx \\ &= 2 \operatorname{Re} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi^*(x, 0) \cdot x \cdot (-i\hbar) \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi\sigma^2}} e^{-\frac{(x-\langle x \rangle)^2}{4\sigma^2}} e^{i\frac{\langle p \rangle}{\hbar}x} \right] dx \\ &= 2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi^*(x, 0) x \langle p \rangle \psi(x, 0) dx = 2 \langle p \rangle \langle x \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

Note that the imaginary portion of the derivative in the middle line disappears when taking the real component.

- We now have everything we need to find the uncertainties  $\Delta x$  and  $\Delta p$ . Starting with  $\Delta p$ , we have:

$$[\Delta p(t)]^2 = \langle p^2, t \rangle - \langle p, t \rangle^2 = \left( \frac{\hbar}{2\sigma} \right)^2 + \langle p \rangle^2 - \langle p \rangle^2 = \left( \frac{\hbar}{2\sigma} \right)^2.$$

For position, the uncertainty  $\Delta x$  is

$$\begin{aligned} [\Delta x(t)]^2 &= \langle x^2, t \rangle - \langle x, t \rangle^2 = \frac{t^2}{m^2} \langle p^2, 0 \rangle + \frac{t}{m} \langle px + xp, 0 \rangle + \langle x^2, 0 \rangle - \left( \frac{t}{m} \langle p, 0 \rangle + \langle x, 0 \rangle \right)^2 \\ &= \frac{t^2}{m^2} \left[ \langle p \rangle^2 + \left( \frac{\hbar}{2\sigma} \right)^2 \right] + \frac{t}{m} 2 \langle p \rangle \langle x \rangle + \sigma^2 + \langle x \rangle^2 - \frac{t^2}{m^2} \langle p \rangle^2 - 2 \frac{t}{m} \langle p \rangle \langle x \rangle - \langle x \rangle^2 \\ &= \sigma^2 + \left( \frac{\hbar t}{2m\sigma} \right)^2. \end{aligned}$$

The product in the two uncertainties is

$$\Delta x(t) \Delta p(t) = \left( \frac{\hbar}{2\sigma} \right)^2 \left( \sigma^2 + \left( \frac{\hbar t}{2m\sigma} \right)^2 \right) = \frac{\hbar}{2} \sqrt{1 + \left( \frac{\hbar t}{2m\sigma^2} \right)^2}.$$

Note that the product in uncertainties starts at the initial value  $\frac{\hbar}{2}$  and increases with time. This immediately implies that the time evolution  $\psi(x, t > 0)$  of the initial Gaussian wave packet  $\psi(x, 0)$  is no longer a Gaussian wave packet. It couldn't be—it has an uncertainty product greater  $\Delta x \Delta p > \frac{\hbar}{2}$ , while Gaussian wave packets are by definition constructed to have  $\Delta x \Delta p = \frac{\hbar}{2}$ .

## 5.2 Theory: Quantum Harmonic Oscillator

- The Hamiltonian of a particle of mass  $m$  in a harmonic oscillator reads

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{kx^2}{2} = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{m\omega}{2} x^2, \quad \omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}.$$

We analyze the harmonic oscillator using the annihilation and creation operators. The annihilation operator  $a$  is

$$a = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{x}{x_0} + i \frac{p}{p_0} \right) \quad \text{where} \quad x_0 = \sqrt{\frac{\hbar}{m\omega}}, \quad p_0 = \frac{\hbar}{x_0},$$

while the creation operator, equal to the adjoint of  $a$ , is

$$a^\dagger = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{x}{x_0} - i \frac{p}{p_0} \right).$$

The annihilation and creation operators don't commute—their commutator is

$$[a, a^\dagger] = 1.$$

Adding and subtracting the two operators give expressions for  $x$  and  $p$

$$x = \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}} (a + a^\dagger) \quad \text{and} \quad p = \frac{p_0}{\sqrt{2}i} (a - a^\dagger).$$

- In terms of  $a$  and  $a^\dagger$ , the harmonic oscillator's Hamiltonian reads

$$H = \hbar\omega \left( a^\dagger a + \frac{1}{2} \right).$$

The Hamiltonian's eigenstates are indexed by  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$  and read

$$H|n\rangle = \hbar\omega\left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)|n\rangle, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

The annihilation and creation operators act on the oscillator's eigenstates as follows:

$$a|n\rangle = \sqrt{n}|n-1\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad a^\dagger|n\rangle = \sqrt{n+1}|n+1\rangle.$$

Note the operator equality  $a^\dagger a|n\rangle = n|n\rangle$ —in other words, acting on an eigenstate  $|n\rangle$  with the operator  $a^\dagger a$  reveals the state's index  $n$ .

### Theory: Ehrenfest Theorem

In our case (for a harmonic oscillator), the theorem reads

$$\frac{d}{dt}\langle x, t \rangle = \frac{\langle p, t \rangle}{m} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{d}{dt}\langle p, t \rangle = \left\langle -\frac{d}{dx}V(x) \right\rangle = -k\langle x, t \rangle.$$

### 5.3 Time Evolution of a Particle in a Harmonic Oscillator

Consider a particle in a harmonic potential with the initial eigenfunction

$$|\psi, 0\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|0\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|1\rangle.$$

Compute the wavefunction's time evolution  $|\psi, t\rangle$  the time-dependent expectation values  $\langle x, t \rangle$  and  $\langle p, t \rangle$  and use this to determine the validity of the Ehrenfest theorem. Finally, determine the product of uncertainties  $\Delta x(t)\Delta p(t)$ .

- First, we find the wavefunction's time evolution. This is relatively simple, since the initial wavefunction is a linear combination of the Hamiltonian's eigenstates. We just have to add the time-dependent phase factors  $e^{-i\frac{E_n}{\hbar}t}$ . Substituting in the energies for a particle in a harmonic oscillator, the result is

$$|\psi, t\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}e^{-i\frac{E_0}{\hbar}t}|0\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}e^{-i\frac{E_1}{\hbar}t}|1\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t}|0\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}e^{-i\frac{3\omega}{2}t}|1\rangle.$$

- Next, working with  $x$  in terms of the annihilation and creation operators, we find the expectation value  $\langle x \rangle$  as

$$\langle x \rangle = \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}}\langle a + a^\dagger \rangle = \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}}(\langle a \rangle + \langle a \rangle^*) = \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} \langle a \rangle.$$

Following similar lines for  $\langle p \rangle$ , we have

$$\langle p \rangle = \frac{p_0}{\sqrt{2}i}\langle a - a^\dagger \rangle = \frac{p_0}{\sqrt{2}i}(\langle a \rangle - \langle a \rangle^*) = \sqrt{2}p_0 \operatorname{Im} \langle a \rangle.$$

These two results are useful: they show that by finding the expectation value  $\langle a \rangle$  we also determine the values of  $\langle x \rangle$  and  $\langle p \rangle$ . Naturally, the next step is to find  $\langle a \rangle$  (we'll find the time-dependent form)

$$\langle a, t \rangle = \langle \psi, t | a | \psi, t \rangle = \langle \psi, t | \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t}a|0\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}e^{-i\frac{3\omega}{2}t}a|1\rangle \right).$$

The annihilation operator eliminates the ground state, i.e.  $a|0\rangle = 0$  and turns the first state into the ground state, i.e.  $a|1\rangle = |0\rangle$ . The expression for  $\langle a, t \rangle$  becomes

$$\begin{aligned}\langle a, t \rangle &= \langle \psi, t | \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} e^{-i\frac{3\omega}{2}t} |0\rangle = \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}t} \langle 0| + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} e^{i\frac{3\omega}{2}t} \langle 1| \right) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} e^{-i\frac{3\omega}{2}t} |0\rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{2} e^{-i\omega t},\end{aligned}$$

where the last equality makes use of the eigenstates' orthogonality. With  $\langle a, t \rangle$  known, we can now find the expectation values of position and momentum. These are

$$\langle x, t \rangle = \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} \langle a, t \rangle = \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}} \cos \omega t \quad \text{and} \quad \langle p, t \rangle = \sqrt{2}p_0 \operatorname{Im} \langle a, t \rangle = -\frac{p_0}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \omega t.$$

- Next, we confirm the validity of the Ehrenfest theorem.

$$\frac{d}{dt} \langle x, t \rangle = \frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}} \cos \omega t \right) = -\frac{\omega x_0}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \omega t \stackrel{?}{=} \frac{\langle p, t \rangle}{m} = -\frac{p_0}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \omega t.$$

Comparing the equalities, canceling like terms and inserting the definition of  $p_0$  and  $\omega$ , we have

$$\omega x_0 \stackrel{?}{=} \frac{p_0}{m} = \frac{\hbar}{x_0 m} \implies \omega \stackrel{?}{=} \frac{h}{m x_0^2} = \frac{\hbar}{m} \frac{m\omega}{\hbar} = \omega,$$

which satisfies the first part of the Ehrenfest theorem. To confirm the second part of the theorem, we compute

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left( -\frac{p_0}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \omega t \right) = -\frac{p_0 \omega}{\sqrt{2}} \cos \omega t \stackrel{?}{=} -k \langle x, t \rangle.$$

The equality reduces to

$$p_0 \omega \stackrel{?}{=} k x_0 \implies \frac{\hbar}{x_0} \omega = m \omega^2 x_0 \implies x_0^2 \stackrel{?}{=} \frac{\hbar}{m \omega}.$$

The last equality leads to  $\omega = \omega$ , already shown above when confirming the first part of the Ehrenfest theorem.

- Finally, we compute the product  $\Delta x(t) \Delta p(t)$ . By definition,

$$\Delta x(t) = \sqrt{\langle x^2, t \rangle - \langle x, t \rangle^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta p(t) = \sqrt{\langle p^2, t \rangle - \langle p, t \rangle^2}.$$

First, we express  $\langle x \rangle$  in terms of the annihilation operator  $a$ :

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x^2 \rangle &= \left\langle \left[ \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}} (a + a^\dagger) \right]^2 \right\rangle = \frac{x_0^2}{2} \langle a^2 + a a^\dagger + a^\dagger a + a^{\dagger 2} \rangle \\ &= \frac{x_0^2}{2} \langle a^2 + 2a^\dagger a + a^{\dagger 2} + 1 \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

Where the last equality uses the identity  $[a, a^\dagger] = 1 \implies a a^\dagger = 1 + a^\dagger a$ . Continuing on, we have

$$\langle x^2 \rangle = \frac{x_0^2}{2} \left( 2\langle a^\dagger a \rangle + \langle a^2 \rangle + \langle a^{\dagger 2} \rangle + 1 \right) = x_0^2 \left( \operatorname{Re} \langle a^2 \rangle + \langle a^\dagger a \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \right).$$

Next, we express  $\langle p^2 \rangle$  in terms of  $a$  with a similar procedure:

$$\begin{aligned}\langle p^2 \rangle &= \left( \frac{p_0}{\sqrt{2}i} \right)^2 \langle (a - a^\dagger)^2 \rangle = -\frac{p_0}{2} \langle a^2 - aa^\dagger - a^\dagger a + a^{\dagger 2} \rangle \\ &= -\frac{p_0}{2} \langle a^2 - 2a^\dagger a - 1 + a^{\dagger 2} \rangle = p_0^2 \left( -\text{Re} \langle a^2 \rangle + \langle a^\dagger a \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \right).\end{aligned}$$

- Next, we find the expectation value  $\langle a^2, t \rangle$ :

$$\langle a^2, t \rangle = \langle \psi, t | \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t} a^2 |0\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} e^{-i\frac{3\omega}{2}t} a^2 |1\rangle \right).$$

We make a brief intermezzo to note that

$$a^2 |0\rangle = a(a |0\rangle) = a \cdot 0 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad a^2 |1\rangle = a(a |1\rangle) = a |0\rangle = 0.$$

With these identities in hand, we have

$$\langle a^2, t \rangle = \langle \psi, t | \cdot 0 = 0.$$

- One more expectation value to go:  $\langle a^\dagger a, t \rangle$

$$\begin{aligned}\langle a^\dagger a, t \rangle &= \langle \psi, t | \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t} a^\dagger a |0\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} e^{-i\frac{3\omega}{2}t} a^\dagger a |1\rangle \right) = \langle \psi, t | \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} e^{-i\frac{3\omega}{2}t} |1\rangle \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}t} \langle 0| + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} e^{i\frac{3\omega}{2}t} \langle 1| \right) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} e^{-i\frac{3\omega}{2}t} |1\rangle = \frac{1}{2}.\end{aligned}$$

The derivation uses the identity  $a^\dagger a |n\rangle = n |n\rangle$  and the eigenstates' orthogonality.

- We now have everything we need to find the product of uncertainties in  $x$  and  $p$ . Putting the pieces together, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x^2, t \rangle &= x_0^2 \left( \text{Re} \langle a^2 \rangle + \langle a^\dagger a \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \right) = x_0^2 \left( 0 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \right) = x_0^2 \\ \langle p^2, t \rangle &= p_0^2 \left( -\text{Re} \langle a^2 \rangle + \langle a^\dagger a \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \right) = p_0^2 \left( 0 + \langle a^\dagger a \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \right) = p_0^2 \\ \langle x, t \rangle &= \sqrt{2} x_0 \text{Re} \langle a, t \rangle = \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}} \cos \omega t \\ \langle p, t \rangle &= \sqrt{2} p_0 \text{Im} \langle a, t \rangle = -\frac{p_0}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \omega t.\end{aligned}$$

The uncertainties  $\Delta x(t)$  and  $\Delta p$  are then

$$\begin{aligned}[\Delta x(t)]^2 &= \langle x^2, t \rangle - \langle x \rangle^2 = x_0^2 - \frac{x_0^2}{2} \cos^2 \omega t = x_0^2 \left( 1 - \frac{\cos^2 \omega t}{2} \right) \\ [\Delta p(t)]^2 &= \langle p^2, t \rangle - \langle p \rangle^2 = p_0^2 - \frac{p_0^2}{2} \sin^2 \omega t = p_0^2 \left( 1 - \frac{\sin^2 \omega t}{2} \right).\end{aligned}$$

The product in uncertainties is

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta x(t) \Delta p(t) &= x_0 p_0 \sqrt{\left( 1 - \frac{\cos^2 \omega t}{2} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{\sin^2 \omega t}{2} \right)} \\ &= \hbar \sqrt{\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} \sin^2 \omega t \cos^2 \omega t} = \hbar \sqrt{\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{16} \sin^2 2\omega t}.\end{aligned}$$

In other words, the product of uncertainties oscillates in time between a minimum value of  $\frac{\hbar}{\sqrt{2}}$  to a maximum value of  $\frac{3\hbar}{4}$ .



## Take Two, Using the Heisenberg Approach

- We start with an expression for  $\langle x, t \rangle$ , using the Heisenberg approach

$$\langle x, t \rangle = \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} \langle \psi, 0 | a(t) | \psi, 0 \rangle.$$

We start with the equation for the operator  $a(t)$ :

$$\dot{a}(t) = \frac{i}{\hbar} [H, a](t).$$

Making use of  $[a, a^\dagger] = 1$  and  $[a^\dagger, a] = -1$ , the commutator  $[H, a]$  is

$$[H, a] = [\hbar\omega(a^\dagger a + \frac{1}{2}), a] = \hbar\omega[a^\dagger a, a] = \hbar\omega([a^\dagger, a]a + a^\dagger[a, a]) = -\hbar\omega a,$$

and the equation for  $a(t)$  reads

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{a}(t) = -i\omega a(t) &\implies \frac{da}{a} = -i\omega dt \implies \ln a(t) = -i\omega t + C \\ a(t) &= D e^{-i\omega t}. \end{aligned}$$

We find the constant  $D$  with the initial condition  $a(0) = a$ , which leads to the final solution

$$a(t) = a e^{-i\omega t}.$$

Inserting  $a(t)$  into the expression  $\langle x, t \rangle = \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} \langle \psi, 0 | a(t) | \psi, 0 \rangle$  gives

$$\langle x, t \rangle = \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} \langle \psi, 0 | a e^{-i\omega t} | \psi, 0 \rangle = \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} [e^{-i\omega t} \langle \psi, 0 | a | \psi, 0 \rangle].$$

This general result holds for any initial state  $|\psi, 0\rangle$  of a particle in a harmonic potential. For our specific initial state, the expression reads

$$\langle \psi, 0 | a | \psi, 0 \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} a | 0 \rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} a | 1 \rangle \right) | \psi, 0 \rangle = \langle \psi, 0 | \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} | 0 \rangle = \frac{1}{2}.$$

The result for  $\langle x, t \rangle$  then reads

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x, t \rangle &= \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} [e^{-i\omega t} \langle \psi, 0 | a | \psi, 0 \rangle] = \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} \left[ \frac{1}{2} e^{-i\omega t} \right] \\ &= \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}} \cos \omega t, \end{aligned}$$

which matches the result from the earlier Schrödinger approach.

## 6 Sixth Exercise Set

### 6.1 Theory: Coherent States of the Quantum Harmonic Oscillator

- The annihilation operator's eigenstates are called *coherent states* of the quantum harmonic oscillator's Hamiltonian. Coherent states  $|\psi\rangle$  of a QHO satisfy the eigenvalue equation

$$a |\psi\rangle = \lambda |\psi\rangle, \quad \lambda \in \mathbb{C}.$$

Recall that  $a$  is not Hermitian, so the eigenvalue  $\lambda$  is in general complex. By convention, we make the potentially complex nature of  $\lambda$  explicit by writing

$$a |z\rangle = z |z\rangle,$$

where  $|z\rangle$  is just a new notation for the coherent eigenstate and  $z$  is the corresponding eigenvalue.

- The next step is to find the coherent states' time evolution  $|z, t\rangle$ . One way to do this is to expand the coherent state in the QHO eigenstate basis  $|n\rangle$  in the form

$$|z\rangle = \sum_n c_n |n\rangle.$$

Inserting this expression for  $|z\rangle$  in to the eigenvalue equation  $a|z\rangle = z|z\rangle$  gives

$$a|z\rangle = z|z\rangle \implies \sum_n c_n a|n\rangle = \sum_n c_n z|n\rangle.$$

Substituting in the annihilation operator's action  $a|n\rangle = \sqrt{n}|n-1\rangle$  on the QHO eigenstates  $|n\rangle$  leads to

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sqrt{n} |n-1\rangle = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n z |n\rangle.$$

Note that  $n$  starts at 1 in the left sum because the annihilation operator eliminates the ground state  $|0\rangle$ . Keeping in mind the orthogonality of the eigenstates with different  $n$ , the above equality only holds if the coefficients of each  $|n\rangle$  term in the left and right sums are equal, i.e.

$$c_{n+1} \sqrt{n+1} = c_n z \implies c_{n+1} = \frac{z}{\sqrt{n+1}} c_n.$$

This is a recursive relation between the coefficients  $c_n$  of the eigenstate expansion of the coherent states. We can recognize the general form from the pattern in the first few terms:

$$\begin{aligned} n=0 &\implies c_1 = c_0 z \\ n=1 &\implies c_2 = c_1 \frac{z}{\sqrt{2}} = c_0 \frac{z^2}{\sqrt{1 \cdot 2}} \\ &\vdots \\ c_n &= \frac{z^n}{\sqrt{n!}} c_0. \end{aligned}$$

As long as we know  $c_0$ , we can find all  $c_n$  with the above expression. Returning to the expansion of the coherent  $|z\rangle$ , we have

$$|z\rangle = \sum_n c_n |n\rangle = c_0 \sum_n \frac{z^n}{\sqrt{n!}} |n\rangle.$$

- We find  $c_0$  by requiring the coherent states are normalized:

$$1 \equiv \langle z|z\rangle = \left( c_0^* \sum_n \frac{z^{*n}}{\sqrt{n!}} \langle n| \right) \left( c_0 \sum_m \frac{z^m}{\sqrt{m!}} |m\rangle \right).$$

We only have to evaluate one sum, since orthogonality of the QHO eigenstates means  $\langle n|m\rangle = \delta_{nm}$ . We then have

$$1 \equiv \langle z|z\rangle = |c_0|^2 \sum_n \frac{z^{*n} z^n}{n!} = |c_0|^2 \sum_n \frac{|z|^{2n}}{n!} = |c_0|^2 e^{|z|^2} \equiv 1.$$

Solving the last equality for  $c_0$  gives  $c_0 = e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}}$ . We now have everything we need for the eigenfunction expansion of the coherent states. Putting the pieces together gives

$$|z\rangle = \sum_n c_n |n\rangle = c_0 \sum_n \frac{z^n}{\sqrt{n!}} |n\rangle = e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}} \sum_n \frac{z^n}{\sqrt{n!}} |n\rangle.$$

- We now consider another way to write the coherent states  $|z\rangle$  using creation operator's action on the QHO eigenstates:

$$\begin{aligned} a^\dagger |0\rangle &= |1\rangle \implies |1\rangle = a^\dagger |0\rangle \\ a^\dagger |1\rangle &= \sqrt{2} |2\rangle \implies |2\rangle = \frac{a^\dagger |1\rangle}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{(a^\dagger)^2}{\sqrt{1 \cdot 2}} |0\rangle \\ &\vdots \\ |n\rangle &= \frac{(a^\dagger)^n}{\sqrt{n!}} |0\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

Substituting in the expression for the QHO eigenstate  $|n\rangle$  into the expansion of the coherent states  $|z\rangle$  gives

$$|z\rangle = \sum_n c_n |n\rangle = \sum_n \frac{z^n c_0}{\sqrt{n!}} \frac{(a^\dagger)^n}{\sqrt{n!}} |0\rangle = e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}} \sum_n \frac{z^n (a^\dagger)^n}{n!} |0\rangle = e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}} e^{za^\dagger} |0\rangle.$$

In other words, the coherent states  $|z\rangle$  and ground state  $|0\rangle$  are related by the exponential operator  $e^{za^\dagger}$  via

$$|z\rangle = e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}} e^{za^\dagger} |0\rangle.$$

- Next, we will find the time evolution  $|z, t\rangle$  of the coherent states. This is

$$|z, t\rangle = e^{-i\frac{E_n}{\hbar}t} |z\rangle = e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}} \sum_n \frac{z^n}{\sqrt{n!}} \left( e^{-i\omega(n+\frac{1}{2})t} \right) |n\rangle,$$

where we have substituted in the QHO's energy eigenvalues  $E_n = \hbar\omega(n + \frac{1}{2})$ . Some rearranging of  $|z, t\rangle$  leads to

$$|z, t\rangle = e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t} e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}} \sum_n \frac{z^n e^{-i\omega nt}}{\sqrt{n!}} |n\rangle = e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t} e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}} \sum_n \frac{(ze^{-i\omega t})^n}{\sqrt{n!}} |n\rangle.$$

Next, a slight trick. Using  $|ze^{-i\omega t}| = |z| |e^{-i\omega t}| = |z|$ , we re-write the coefficient  $e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}}$  to get

$$|z, t\rangle = e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t} e^{-\frac{|ze^{-i\omega t}|^2}{2}} \sum_n \frac{(ze^{-i\omega t})^n}{\sqrt{n!}} |n\rangle.$$

Except for the factor  $e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t}$ , this expression has the same form as the earlier result

$$|z\rangle = e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}} \sum_n \frac{z^n}{\sqrt{n!}} |n\rangle,$$

with  $z$  replaced by  $ze^{-i\omega t}$ . We use this relationship to write

$$|z, t\rangle = e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t} |ze^{-i\omega t}\rangle.$$

- Finally, an approach to finding the time evolution  $|z, t\rangle$  in the Heisenberg picture. We write  $|z, t\rangle$  in terms of the time evolution operator and use the earlier relationship between  $|z\rangle$  and  $|0\rangle$  via the creation operator  $a^\dagger$  to get

$$|z, t\rangle = e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} |z\rangle = e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \left( e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}} e^{za^\dagger} |0\rangle \right) = e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}} e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} e^{za^\dagger} e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} |0\rangle.$$

The three terms  $e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t}e^{za^\dagger}e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t}$ , with the exponent written as a Taylor series, are

$$\begin{aligned} e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t}e^{za^\dagger}e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} &= e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \left( \sum_n \frac{(za^\dagger)^n}{n!} \right) e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} = \sum_n \frac{z^n}{n!} e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} (a^\dagger)^n e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \\ &= \sum_n \frac{z^n}{n!} \left[ e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} a^\dagger e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} a^\dagger e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \dots e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} a^\dagger e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \right] \\ &= \sum_n \frac{z^n}{n!} \left( e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} a^\dagger e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \right)^n. \end{aligned}$$

Recall that in the Heisenberg approach the time evolution of an operator  $\mathcal{O}$  reads  $\mathcal{O}(t) = e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \mathcal{O} e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t}$ . Applied to our above expression (note the reversed roles of the time evolution operators), we see

$$e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t}e^{za^\dagger}e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} = \sum_n \frac{z^n}{n!} (a^\dagger(-t))^n = e^{za^\dagger(-t)}.$$

The initial expression for  $|z, t\rangle$  in the Heisenberg picture then simplifies to

$$|z, t\rangle = e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}} e^{za^\dagger(-t)} e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} |0\rangle = e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}} e^{za^\dagger(-t)} e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t} |0\rangle.$$

- Next, we find an expression for  $a^\dagger(-t)$ . In the Heisenberg approach, this is

$$a^\dagger(-t) = e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} a^\dagger e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} = \left[ e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} a e^{i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} \right]^\dagger = [a(-t)]^\dagger.$$

Using the relationship  $a(t) = a e^{-i\omega t}$  from the previous exercise set, we finally have

$$a^\dagger(-t) = [a(-t)]^\dagger = [a e^{i\omega t}]^\dagger = a^\dagger e^{-i\omega t}.$$

Substituting the expression for  $a^\dagger(-t)$  into the time evolution  $|z, t\rangle$  to get

$$|z, t\rangle = e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}} e^{z e^{-i\omega t} a^\dagger} e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t} |0\rangle = e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t} e^{-\frac{|z e^{-i\omega t}|^2}{2}} e^{z e^{-i\omega t} a^\dagger} |0\rangle.$$

Recall that, like before in the Schrödinger approach, the equality  $|z|^2 = |z e^{-i\omega t}|^2$  allows us to introduce the phase factor  $e^{-i\omega t}$  into the exponent of  $e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}}$ . Note the similarity between this last result for  $|z, t\rangle$  to the initial expression

$$|z, t\rangle = e^{-i\frac{H}{\hbar}t} e^{-\frac{|z|^2}{2}} e^{za^\dagger} |0\rangle.$$

Aside from the factor  $e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t}$ , the expressions are the same, just with  $z$  shifted to  $z e^{-i\omega t}$ . This allows us to write

$$|z, t\rangle = e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t} e^{-\frac{|z e^{-i\omega t}|^2}{2}} e^{z e^{-i\omega t} a^\dagger} |0\rangle = e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t} |z e^{-i\omega t}\rangle,$$

in agreement with the earlier result using the Schrödinger approach.

- Next, we want to get a better sense for the behavior of the wave function  $|z, t\rangle$ . From the last exercise set, we know the following expressions for any state of quantum harmonic oscillator:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x \rangle &= \sqrt{2} x_0 \operatorname{Re} \langle a \rangle & \langle p \rangle &= \sqrt{2} p_0 \operatorname{Im} \langle a \rangle \\ \langle x^2 \rangle &= x_0^2 (\langle a^\dagger a \rangle + \operatorname{Re} \langle a^2 \rangle \tfrac{1}{2}) & \langle p^2 \rangle &= p_0^2 (\langle a^\dagger a \rangle - \operatorname{Re} \langle a^2 \rangle \tfrac{1}{2}). \end{aligned}$$

Next, using the eigenvalue equation  $a|z\rangle = z|z\rangle$  for coherent states, we have

$$\langle z|(a^\dagger)^n a^m|z\rangle = \langle a^n z|a^m z\rangle = \langle z^n z|z^m z\rangle = z^{*n} z^m.$$

We will use this expression to evaluate the expectation values of  $x$  and  $p$  above. Note the difference between  $z$  as an eigenvalue and  $|z\rangle$  as a coherent state.

- Next, using the just-derived identity  $\langle z|(a^\dagger)^n a^m|z\rangle = z^{*n} z^m$ , the expectation value  $\langle a \rangle$  is

$$\langle a \rangle = \langle 1 \cdot a \rangle = \langle (a^*)^0 a \rangle = z^{*0} z^1 = 1 \cdot z^1 = z.$$

Using  $\langle a \rangle = z$ , the expectation values of  $x$  and  $p$  are

$$\langle x \rangle = \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} z \quad \text{and} \quad \langle p \rangle = \sqrt{2}p_0 \operatorname{Im} z.$$

To find  $\langle x^2 \rangle$  and  $\langle p^2 \rangle$ , we first have to find  $\langle a^\dagger a \rangle$  and  $\langle a^2 \rangle$ . These are

$$\langle a^\dagger a \rangle = |z|^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \langle a^2 \rangle = z^2.$$

The expectation values  $\langle x^2 \rangle$  and  $\langle p^2 \rangle$  are then

$$\langle x^2 \rangle = x_0^2 \left( |z|^2 + \operatorname{Re} z^2 + \frac{1}{2} \right) \quad \text{and} \quad \langle p^2 \rangle = p_0^2 \left( |z|^2 - \operatorname{Re} z^2 + \frac{1}{2} \right)$$

- Next, using the general complex number identity  $\operatorname{Re} z^2 = \frac{z^2 + z^{*2}}{2}$ , we write

$$|z|^2 + \operatorname{Re} z^2 = |z|^2 + \frac{z^2 + z^{*2}}{2} = \frac{1}{2}(z + z^*)^2 = \frac{1}{2}(2 \operatorname{Re} z)^2 = 2 \operatorname{Re}^2 z,$$

which, substituted into  $\langle x^2 \rangle$ , gives

$$\langle x^2 \rangle = x_0^2 \left( |z|^2 + \operatorname{Re} z^2 + \frac{1}{2} \right) = x_0^2 \left( 2 \operatorname{Re}^2 z + \frac{1}{2} \right).$$

A similar procedure for  $\langle p^2 \rangle$  gives

$$\langle p^2 \rangle = p_0^2 \left[ -\frac{1}{2}(z - z^*) + \frac{1}{2} \right] = p_0^2 \left( 2 \operatorname{Im}^2 z + \frac{1}{2} \right).$$

- Next, the uncertainties  $\Delta x$  and  $\Delta p$  are

$$\begin{aligned} (\Delta x)^2 &= \langle x^2 \rangle - \langle x \rangle^2 = x_0^2 \left( 2 \operatorname{Re}^2 z + \frac{1}{2} \right) - \left( \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} z \right)^2 = \frac{x_0^2}{2} \\ (\Delta p)^2 &= \langle p^2 \rangle - \langle p \rangle^2 = p_0^2 \left( \frac{1}{2} + 2 \operatorname{Im}^2 z \right) - \left( \sqrt{2}p_0 \operatorname{Im} z \right)^2 = \frac{p_0^2}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

The product of uncertainties, recalling the definition  $p_0 = \frac{\hbar}{x_0}$ , is

$$\Delta x \Delta p = \sqrt{\frac{x_0^2}{2} \frac{p_0^2}{2}} = \frac{x_0 p_0}{2} = \frac{\hbar}{2}.$$

Note that the product of uncertainties takes the minimum possible value  $\frac{\hbar}{2}$ , meaning a coherent state  $|z\rangle$  of the QHO must be a Gaussian wave packet.

- Recall the general form of a Gaussian wave packet is

$$\psi(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt[4]{2\pi\sigma^2}} \exp\left(-\frac{(x - \langle x \rangle)^2}{4\sigma^2}\right) e^{i\frac{\langle p \rangle}{\hbar}x}.$$

For the coherent state  $|z\rangle$ , substituting in the values of  $\langle x \rangle$ ,  $\langle p \rangle$  and  $\sigma^2 \equiv \langle x^2 \rangle$ , the Gaussian wave packet reads

$$\psi_z(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt[4]{\pi x_0^2}} \exp\left[-\frac{(x - \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} z)^2}{2x_0^2}\right] e^{i\frac{\sqrt{2}p_0}{\hbar} \operatorname{Im} z}.$$

- Finally, we will examine two more properties of the coherent states of a QHO: the expectation values of the Hamiltonian  $H$ . First, recall the Hamiltonian can be written in terms of  $a$  and  $a^\dagger$  as

$$H = \hbar\omega \left(a^\dagger a + \frac{1}{2}\right).$$

We evaluate this with the help of the earlier identity  $\langle z | (a^\dagger)^n a^m | z \rangle = z^{*n} z^m$ . Applied to  $a^\dagger a$ , we have

$$\langle H \rangle = \frac{\hbar\omega}{2} + \hbar\omega \langle a^\dagger a \rangle = \frac{\hbar\omega}{2} + \hbar\omega z^* z = \frac{\hbar\omega}{2} + \hbar\omega |z|^2.$$

For the expectation value  $\langle H^2 \rangle$  we first write  $H$  in terms of  $a$  and  $a^\dagger$ :

$$H^2 = \hbar^2\omega^2 \left(a^\dagger a a^\dagger a + a^\dagger a + \frac{1}{4}\right).$$

To simplify  $a^\dagger a a^\dagger a$  we use the commutator identity

$$[a^\dagger, a] = -1 \implies a a^\dagger = 1 + a^\dagger a.$$

Substituting  $a a^\dagger = 1 + a^\dagger a$  into  $H^2$  and an intermediate step of algebra gives

$$H^2 = \hbar^2\omega^2 \left(a^{\dagger 2} a^2 + 2a^\dagger a + \frac{1}{4}\right).$$

We again use the earlier identity  $\langle z | (a^\dagger)^n a^m | z \rangle = z^{*n} z^m$  to get

$$\langle H^2 \rangle = \hbar^2\omega^2 \left(z^{*2} z^2 + 2z^* z + \frac{1}{4}\right) = \hbar^2\omega^2 \left(|z|^4 + 2|z|^2 + \frac{1}{4}\right).$$

The energy uncertainty is then

$$\begin{aligned} (\Delta H)^2 &= \langle H^2 \rangle - \langle H \rangle^2 = \hbar^2\omega^2 \left(|z|^4 + 2|z|^2 + \frac{1}{4}\right) - \left(\frac{\hbar\omega}{2} + \hbar\omega |z|^2\right)^2 \\ &= \hbar^2\omega^2 |z|^2 \implies \Delta H = \hbar\omega |z|. \end{aligned}$$

- Next, we consider the ratio

$$\frac{\Delta H}{\langle H \rangle} = \frac{\hbar\omega |z|}{\hbar\omega (|z|^2 + \frac{1}{2})} \approx \frac{1}{|z|}, \quad |z| \gg 1 \implies \lim_{|z| \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\Delta H}{\langle H \rangle} = 0.$$

In other words, the relative uncertainty in energy  $\frac{\Delta H}{\langle H \rangle}$  approaches zero for large  $|z|$ .

We want a better understanding of what  $|z| \gg 1$  means. To do this, we first examine the earlier expressions for a QHO coherent state:

$$\langle x \rangle = \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} z \quad \text{and} \quad \langle x, t \rangle = \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} \{ze^{-i\omega t}\}.$$

If we write the complex number  $z$  in the polar form  $z = |z|e^{i\delta}$ ,  $\langle x, t \rangle$  becomes

$$\langle x, t \rangle = \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} \{ze^{i\delta-i\omega t}\} = \sqrt{2}x_0|z| \cos(\omega t - \delta).$$

In other words, large  $|z|$  means a large amplitude of oscillation in the time-dependent expectation value  $\langle x, t \rangle$ .

## 6.2 Harmonic Oscillator in an Electric Field

*Consider a particle of mass  $m$  and charge  $q$  at the equilibrium position  $x_0$  of a spring with spring constant  $k$  constrained to oscillate along the  $x$  axis. At time  $t = 0$ , we turn on an external electric field  $\mathcal{E}$  in the positive  $x$  direction. Solve for the particle's motion using quantum mechanics.*

- First, we find the classical solution with Newton's law to get a feel for the solution. Newton's law reads:

$$m\ddot{x} = -kx + q\mathcal{E}.$$

Turning the field exerts a force on the particle in the  $x$  direction, moving the equilibrium position to  $\tilde{x}_0 = x_0 + x_1 > x_0$ . The particle starts at the far left amplitude  $x_0$  and oscillates about the new equilibrium position  $\tilde{x}_0$  with amplitude  $x_1$ .

Placing the origin at  $x_0 \equiv 0$ , the initial conditions are  $x(0) = 0$  and  $\dot{x}(0) = 0$ . The solution is

$$x(t) = x_1(1 - \cos \omega t) \quad \text{where} \quad \omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}, \quad x_1 = \frac{q\mathcal{E}}{k}.$$

- Next, the quantum mechanical picture. The particle's Hamiltonian is

$$H(t) = \begin{cases} \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}kx^2 & t < 0 \\ \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}kx^2 - q\mathcal{E}x & t > 0 \end{cases}.$$

Note that turning on the field adds the potential energy term  $-q\mathcal{E}x$  to the initial Hamiltonian.

*Notation:* all quantities for  $t > 0$ , after the field is turned on, will be written with a tilde.

- In the classical picture, the particle takes the initial position  $x(0) = 0$ . This doesn't carry over in quantum mechanics—specifying an exact position violates the uncertainty principle. Instead, we place the particle in the harmonic oscillator's ground state:  $|\psi, 0\rangle = |0\rangle$  where  $H|0\rangle = \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega|0\rangle$ . Our goal will be to find the time-dependent wave function  $|\psi, t\rangle$  and then compute the position expectation value  $\langle x, t \rangle$ .
- Let's begin! First, we expand the electric field Hamiltonian to a perfect square

$$\tilde{H} = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{k}{2} \left(x - \frac{e\mathcal{E}}{k}\right)^2 - \frac{1}{2}k \left(\frac{q\mathcal{E}}{k}\right)^2 = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{k}{2} (x - x_1)^2 - \frac{1}{2}kx_1^2,$$

where we have substituted in the amplitude  $x_1 = \frac{q\mathcal{E}}{k}$  from the classical solution. Next, we denote the post-field potential

$$\tilde{V}(x) = \frac{k}{2}(x - x_1)^2 - \frac{1}{2}kx_1^2.$$

Note that while the pre-field potential  $V(x) = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$  has its minimum at  $(0, 0)$ , the post-field potential  $\tilde{V}(x)$ 's minimum is shifted to  $(x_1, -\frac{1}{2}kx_1^2)$ . With this shift of the equilibrium position in mind, we introduce new coordinates

$$\tilde{x} = x - x_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{p} = -i\hbar \frac{d}{d\tilde{x}} = -i\hbar \frac{d}{dx} = p.$$

The Hamiltonian  $\tilde{H}$  then reads

$$\tilde{H} = \frac{\tilde{p}^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}k\tilde{x}^2 - \frac{1}{2}kx_1^2.$$

- The Hamiltonian's shifted annihilation operator is

$$\tilde{a} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{\tilde{x}}{x_0} + i \frac{\tilde{p}}{p_0} \right),$$

where  $x_0 = \sqrt{\frac{\hbar}{m\omega}}$  and  $p_0 = \frac{\hbar}{x_0}$ . The difference between  $\tilde{a}$  and the unshifted  $a$  is

$$\tilde{a} - a = -\frac{x_1}{\sqrt{2}x_0} \implies \tilde{a} = a - \frac{x_1}{\sqrt{2}x_0}.$$

- Recall the annihilation operator actions on the quantum harmonic oscillator's eigenstates as  $a|n\rangle = \sqrt{n}|n-1\rangle$  and  $a|0\rangle = 0$ . In our case, the shifted annihilation operator  $\tilde{a}$  acts on our problem's initial state  $|\psi, 0\rangle = |0\rangle$  as

$$\tilde{a}|\psi, 0\rangle = \left( a - \frac{x_1}{\sqrt{2}x_0} \right) |0\rangle = 0 - \frac{x_1}{\sqrt{2}x_0} |0\rangle \implies \tilde{a}|\psi, 0\rangle = -\frac{x_1}{\sqrt{2}x_0} |\psi, 0\rangle.$$

In other words, our initial state  $|\psi, 0\rangle$  is an eigenstate of the shifted annihilation operator  $\tilde{a}$  with the eigenvalue  $-\frac{x_1}{\sqrt{2}x_0}$ . This means the initial state is a coherent state of the annihilation operator  $\tilde{a}$ , so we can use the results from the theory section on coherent states.

- From the theory section, an coherent state  $|\psi, 0\rangle$  satisfying  $a|\psi, 0\rangle = z|\psi, 0\rangle$  with eigenvalue  $z$  evolves in time as

$$|\psi, t\rangle = e^{-\frac{\omega}{2}t} |ze^{-i\omega t}\rangle,$$

where the eigenvalue  $z$  changes with time as  $z(t) = ze^{-i\omega t}$ . Meanwhile, the position expectation value is

$$\langle x \rangle = \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} z.$$

In our case, the time-dependent expectation value of the shifted position  $\tilde{x}$  is thus

$$\langle \tilde{x}, t \rangle = \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} z(t) = \sqrt{2}x_0 \operatorname{Re} \left\{ -\frac{x_1}{\sqrt{2}x_0} e^{-i\omega t} \right\} = -x_1 \cos \omega t.$$

The unshifted position is  $x = x_1 + \tilde{x}$ , which implies

$$\langle x, t \rangle = x_1 - x_1 \cos \omega t = x_1(1 - \cos \omega t),$$

in agreement with the classical result  $x(t) = x_1(1 - \cos \omega t)$ .



## 7 Seventh Exercise Set

### 7.1 Theory: Two-Dimensional Harmonic Oscillator

- We generalize the harmonic oscillator to two dimensions by introducing the vector operators

$$\mathbf{r} = (x, y) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{p} = (p_x, p_y) = \left( -i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, -i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \right) = -i\hbar \nabla.$$

We write the oscillator's Hamiltonian as

$$H = \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}k_x x^2 + \frac{1}{2}k_y y^2 = \frac{p_x^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}k_x x^2 + \frac{p_y^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}k_y y^2 \equiv H_x + H_y.$$

In other words, we can write the two-dimensional Hamiltonian as the sum of two one-dimensional Hamiltonians corresponding to motion in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions.

- We want to solve the stationary Schrödinger equation

$$H\psi(x, y) = E\psi(x, y).$$

The equation can be solved with separation of variables because the two-dimensional Hamiltonian can be decomposed into the sum of one-dimensional  $x$  and  $y$  Hamiltonians. We make this separation explicit by defining

$$\begin{aligned} H_x \psi_{n_x} &= E_{n_x} \psi_{n_x}(x) & \text{where} & & E_{n_x} &= \hbar\omega_x \left( n_x + \frac{1}{2} \right), & \omega_x &= \sqrt{\frac{k_x}{m}} \\ H_y \psi_{n_y} &= E_{n_y} \psi_{n_y}(y) & \text{where} & & E_{n_y} &= \hbar\omega_y \left( n_y + \frac{1}{2} \right), & \omega_y &= \sqrt{\frac{k_y}{m}} \end{aligned}$$

for  $n_x, n_y = 0, 1, 2, \dots$  and then writing

$$H\psi(x, y) = E\psi(x, y) \rightarrow H\psi_{n_x}(x)\psi_{n_y}(y) = (E_{n_x} + E_{n_y})\psi_{n_x}(x)\psi_{n_y}(y).$$

- In terms of the annihilation and creation operators, the Hamiltonian reads

$$H = H_x + H_y = \hbar\omega_x \left( a_x^\dagger a_x + \frac{1}{2} \right) + \hbar\omega_y \left( a_y^\dagger a_y + \frac{1}{2} \right),$$

where the annihilation and creation operators are defined as

$$\begin{aligned} a_x &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{x}{x_0} + i \frac{p_x}{p_{0x}} \right) & \text{where} & & x_0 &= \sqrt{\frac{\hbar}{m\omega_x}}, & p_{0x} &= \frac{\hbar}{x_0} \\ a_y &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{y}{y_0} + i \frac{p_y}{p_{0y}} \right) & \text{where} & & y_0 &= \sqrt{\frac{\hbar}{m\omega_y}}, & p_{0y} &= \frac{\hbar}{y_0}. \end{aligned}$$

- With the annihilation and creation operators defined, we write

$$H_x |n_x\rangle = \hbar\omega_x \left( n_x + \frac{1}{2} \right) |n_x\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad H_y |n_y\rangle = \hbar\omega_y \left( n_y + \frac{1}{2} \right) |n_y\rangle.$$

For the two-dimensional Hamiltonian we write separation of variables as

$$H |n_x\rangle |n_y\rangle = \left[ \hbar\omega_x \left( n_x + \frac{1}{2} \right) + \hbar\omega_y \left( n_y + \frac{1}{2} \right) \right] |n_x\rangle |n_y\rangle.$$

A slightly shorter notation for the same expression reads

$$H |n_x n_y\rangle = \left[ \hbar\omega_x \left( n_x + \frac{1}{2} \right) + \hbar\omega_y \left( n_y + \frac{1}{2} \right) \right] |n_x n_y\rangle.$$

## A Few Special Cases

- Consider the degenerate case with  $k_x > 0$  and  $k_y = 0$ . In this case the  $y$  Hamiltonian has only a kinetic term:

$$H_x = \frac{p_x^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}k_x x^2 \quad \text{and} \quad H_y = \frac{p_y^2}{2m}.$$

In this case the  $y$  Hamiltonian's eigenfunctions are simply plane waves:

$$H_y e^{i\kappa_y y} = \frac{\hbar^2 \kappa_y^2}{2m} e^{i\kappa_y y} \quad \text{or} \quad H_y |\kappa_y\rangle = \frac{\hbar^2 \kappa_y^2}{2m} |\kappa_y\rangle.$$

We would then solve the eigenvalue equation

$$H |n_x \kappa_y\rangle = \left[ \hbar \omega_2 \left( n_x + \frac{1}{2} \right) + \frac{\hbar^2 \kappa_y^2}{2m} \right] |n_x \kappa_y\rangle.$$

- Next, if both spring constants are zero with  $k_x = k_y = 0$  (i.e. a free particle in two dimensions) we have the purely kinetic Hamiltonian  $H = \frac{p^2}{2m}$ . Both the  $x$  and  $y$  eigenfunctions are plane waves

$$H_x e^{i\kappa_x x} = \frac{\hbar^2 \kappa_x^2}{2m} e^{i\kappa_x x} \quad \text{and} \quad H_y e^{i\kappa_y y} = \frac{\hbar^2 \kappa_y^2}{2m} e^{i\kappa_y y},$$

and the Schrödinger equation reads

$$H |\kappa_x \kappa_y\rangle = \left[ \frac{\hbar^2 \kappa_x^2}{2m} + \frac{\hbar^2 \kappa_y^2}{2m} \right] |\kappa_x \kappa_y\rangle \quad \text{or} \quad H |\boldsymbol{\kappa}\rangle = \frac{\hbar^2 \boldsymbol{\kappa}^2}{2m} |\boldsymbol{\kappa}\rangle,$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\kappa} = (\kappa_x, \kappa_y)$ .

- Finally, we consider the case  $k_x = k_y \equiv k > 0$  when both spring constants are equal. The potential then reads

$$V(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{2}k(x^2 + y^2) = \frac{1}{2}kr^2.$$

Note that the potential depends only on the distance  $r$  from the origin; such an oscillator is called *isotropic*.

Because  $k_x = k_y \equiv k$  we have  $\omega_x = \omega_y \equiv \omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$ . The stationary Schrödinger then reads

$$H |n_x n_y\rangle = \hbar \omega (n_x + n_y + 1) |n_x n_y\rangle.$$

The system's lowest possible energy occurs for  $n_x = n_y = 0$ , where the stationary Schrödinger equation reads  $H |00\rangle = \hbar \omega |00\rangle$ . This is the ground state, and the energy  $E_{00} = \hbar \omega$  is called the zero-point energy.

The first two excited states are

$$H |10\rangle = \hbar \omega |10\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad H |01\rangle = \hbar \omega |01\rangle.$$

Note that the first excited states is doubly degenerate—two linearly independent eigenfunctions  $|10\rangle$  and  $|01\rangle$  have the same energy. In general, the  $n$ th excited state of a 2D isotropic harmonic oscillator has degeneracy  $n + 1$ .

### Theory: The $z$ Component of Angular Momentum

- Eigenstates  $|\psi\rangle$  of the  $z$  component of angular momentum operator  $L_z$  satisfy

$$L_z |\psi\rangle = \lambda |\psi\rangle.$$

The operator  $L_z$  can be written

$$L_z = xp_y - yp_x = -\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi},$$

where  $\phi$  is the azimuthal angle in the spherical coordinate system. Using the definition  $L_z = -\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi}$  in spherical coordinates, the eigenvalue equation in coordinate notation reads

$$-i\hbar\psi'(\phi) = \lambda\psi(\phi).$$

Separating variables and integrating the equation gives

$$\ln \psi = \frac{i\lambda}{\hbar} \phi + C \implies \psi(\phi) = \tilde{C} e^{i\frac{\lambda}{\hbar} \phi}.$$

To satisfy periodicity over a full rotation of  $2\pi$ , we require  $\psi(\phi + 2\pi) = \psi(\phi)$ , which implies the quantization

$$\frac{\lambda}{\hbar} = m; \quad m \in \mathbb{Z} \implies \psi(\phi) = \tilde{C} e^{im\phi}.$$

We find the integration constant  $\tilde{C}$  with the normalization condition

$$1 \equiv \int_0^{2\pi} \psi^*(\phi) \psi(\phi) d\phi = 2\pi |\tilde{C}|^2 \implies \tilde{C} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}.$$

The eigenfunctions of the angular momentum operator  $L_z$  are thus

$$\psi_m(\phi) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{im\phi}, \quad m \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

In Dirac notation, the eigenfunctions are written simply  $|m\rangle$ , where the reference to the angular momentum operator is usually clear from context.

Using the relationship  $\lambda = \hbar m$ , the eigenvalue equation in Dirac notation reads

$$L_z |\psi\rangle = m\hbar |\psi\rangle.$$

## 7.2 Two-Dimensional Isotropic Harmonic Oscillator

Consider a two-dimensional isotropic harmonic oscillator. Within the subspace of energy eigenstates with energy  $E = 2\hbar\omega$ , find those states that are also eigenstates of the  $z$ -component of angular momentum  $L_z$ .

- The energy  $E = 2\hbar\omega$  corresponds to the isotropic oscillator's first two excited states  $|10\rangle$  and  $|01\rangle$ . These states have degeneracy two, meaning the subspace is spanned by two linearly independent states. The subspace is formed of all normalized linear combinations of  $|01\rangle$  and  $|10\rangle$ , i.e. all  $|\psi\rangle$  for which

$$|\psi\rangle = \alpha |10\rangle + \beta |01\rangle, \quad \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{C}, \quad |\alpha|^2 + |\beta|^2 = 1.$$

The Hamiltonian acts on  $|\psi\rangle$  according to

$$\begin{aligned} H|\psi\rangle &= \alpha H|10\rangle + \beta H|01\rangle = \alpha 2\hbar\omega|10\rangle + \beta 2\hbar\omega|01\rangle \\ &= 2\hbar\omega(\alpha|10\rangle + \beta|01\rangle) = 2\hbar\omega|\psi\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

Evidently,  $\psi$  is an eigenfunction of  $H$  with energy eigenvalue  $2\hbar\omega$ . We are interested in  $\psi$  that are also eigenfunctions of  $L_z$ , which must satisfy the eigenvalue equation

$$L_z|\psi\rangle = m\hbar|\psi\rangle.$$

- It is possible to find functions that are simultaneously eigenfunctions of two operators if the two operators commute. Applied to our problem, if we show that  $H$  and  $L_z$  commute, we can be sure there exist functions that are eigenfunctions of both  $H$  and  $L_z$ . In other words, we want to show our problem is solvable by proving  $[H, L_z] = 0$ . We will first write the Hamiltonian in polar coordinates:

$$H = \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}kr^2 = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2 + \frac{1}{2}kr^2 = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\left[\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\right) + \frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\phi^2}\right] + \frac{1}{2}kr^2.$$

Using the definition of  $L_z$  in polar coordinates, the commutator reads

$$\begin{aligned} [H, L_z] &= \left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\left[\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\right) + \frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\phi^2}\right] + \frac{1}{2}kr^2, -i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\right] \\ &= \left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2mr^2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\phi^2}, -i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\right] = 0. \end{aligned}$$

The entire proof rests on the commutativity of second derivatives, i.e.

$$\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\phi\partial r} = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial r\partial\phi} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial^2}{\partial\phi^2}\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi} = \frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\phi^2}.$$

The derivatives with respect to  $\phi$  then cancel the  $r$ -dependent terms in the Hamiltonian. All we did here is show that eigenfunctions solving our problem exist in the first place by showing  $H$  and  $L_z$  commute.

- To actually solve the problem, we will take both a heuristic and a formal approach. We start with a heuristic approach. From the introductory theory section, the eigenfunctions solving  $H|10\rangle = 2\hbar\omega|10\rangle$  and  $H|01\rangle = 2\hbar\omega|01\rangle$  can be written in the separated form

$$\psi_{10}(x, y) = \psi_1(x)\psi_0(y) \quad \text{and} \quad \psi_{01}(x, y) = \psi_0(x)\psi_1(y).$$

Next, recall the annihilation operator action on the ground state produces

$$a|0\rangle = 0|0\rangle.$$

In other words,  $|0\rangle$  is an eigenstate of the annihilation operator (i.e. a coherent state) with eigenvalue  $z = 0$ . From the previous exercise set, we know that the eigenfunctions of coherent states are Gaussian wave packets. If  $z = 0$ , then  $\langle x \rangle = 0$  and  $\langle p \rangle = 0$ , and the wavefunction would read

$$\psi_0(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt[4]{\pi x_0^2}} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2x_0^2}}.$$

- We can get an expression for the first excited state  $|1\rangle$  with the creation operator  $a^\dagger|0\rangle = |1\rangle$ . In the coordinate representation of the operator, this reads

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_1(x) &= a^\dagger \psi_0(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{x}{x_0} - i \frac{p}{p_0} \right) \psi_0(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{x}{x_0} - \frac{\hbar}{p_0} \frac{d}{dx} \right) \psi_0(x) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{x}{x_0} - x_0 \frac{d}{dx} \right) \psi_0(x).\end{aligned}$$

Applied to the Gaussian wave packet  $\psi_0(x)$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_1(x) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{x}{x_0} \psi_0(x) - \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{d}{dx} \left[ \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi x_0^2}} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2x_0^2}} \right] = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{x}{x_0} \psi_0(x) + \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{x}{x_0^2} \psi_0(x) \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{x_0} x \psi_0(x).\end{aligned}$$

We can then write the states  $\psi_{10}$  and  $\psi_{01}$  as

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_{10}(x, y) &= \psi_1(x) \psi_0(y) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{x_0} x \psi_0(x) \psi_0(y) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{x_0} \frac{x}{\sqrt{\pi x_0^2}} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2x_0^2}} e^{-\frac{y^2}{2x_0^2}} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{x_0} \frac{x}{\sqrt{\pi x_0^2}} e^{-\frac{r^2}{2x_0^2}} = \frac{\sqrt{2} r \cos \phi}{x_0 \sqrt{\pi x_0^2}} e^{-\frac{r^2}{2x_0^2}},\end{aligned}$$

and, analogously,

$$\psi_{01}(x, y) = \psi_0(x) \psi_1(y) = \frac{\sqrt{2} r \sin \phi}{x_0 \sqrt{\pi x_0^2}} e^{-\frac{r^2}{2x_0^2}}.$$

*We ran out of time at this point; the problem is continued in the eight exercise set.*

## 8 Eight Exercise Set

### 8.1 Two-Dimensional Isotropic Harmonic Oscillator (continued)

We left off in the previous exercise set having found the harmonic oscillator's states  $\psi_{10}(x, y)$  and  $\psi_{01}(x, y)$ ; these were

$$\psi_{10}(x, y) = \frac{\sqrt{2} r \cos \phi}{x_0 \sqrt{\pi x_0^2}} e^{-\frac{r^2}{2x_0^2}} \quad \text{and} \quad \psi_{01}(x, y) = \frac{\sqrt{2} r \sin \phi}{x_0 \sqrt{\pi x_0^2}} e^{-\frac{r^2}{2x_0^2}}.$$

These are the two linearly independent states spanning the isotropic harmonic oscillator's subspace of eigenstates with energy  $E = 2\hbar\omega$ . Our next step is to find the linear combinations of  $\psi_{10}$  and  $\psi_{01}$  that are also eigenstates of the operator  $L_z$ .

- Recall that the eigenfunctions of  $L_z$  are

$$\psi_m(\phi) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{im\phi}, \quad m \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

Recall also the identities  $\cos \phi + i \sin \phi = e^{i\phi}$  and  $\cos \phi - i \sin \phi = e^{-i\phi}$ .

- Comparing these identities to the definitions of  $\psi_{10}$ ,  $\psi_{01}$  and  $\psi_m(\phi)$ , we can construct the  $L_z$  eigenstate with  $m = 1$  via

$$|m = 1\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|10\rangle + i|01\rangle),$$

where the  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$  term ensures the state is normalized. To confirm the state  $|m = 1\rangle$  is normalized, note that

$$\begin{aligned}\langle m = 1 | m = 1 \rangle &= \frac{1}{2} (\langle 10| - i \langle 01|) (|10\rangle + i|01\rangle) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (\langle 10|10\rangle - i \langle 01|10\rangle + i \langle 10|01\rangle + \langle 01|01\rangle) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (1 - i + i + 1) = 1.\end{aligned}$$

Finally, we construct the state with  $m = -1$  with

$$|m = -1\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|10\rangle - i|01\rangle).$$

### Formal Approach

- Consider an eigenstate  $|\psi\rangle$  that is both an eigenstate of  $H$  with  $E = 2\hbar\omega$  and an eigenstate of  $L_z$ . This state must satisfy

$$|\psi\rangle = \alpha|10\rangle + \beta|01\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad L_z|\psi\rangle = \lambda|\psi\rangle.$$

First, we write the 2D Hamiltonian  $H$  in terms of the creation and annihilation operators:

$$H = \hbar\omega_x(a_x^\dagger a_x + \frac{1}{2}) + \hbar\omega_y(a_y^\dagger a_y + \frac{1}{2}) \equiv H_x + H_y.$$

- For the isotropic oscillator with  $\omega_x = \omega_y$ , this simplifies to

$$H = \hbar\omega(a_x^\dagger a_x + a_y^\dagger a_y + 1).$$

More so, both the constants  $x_0$ ,  $y_0$  and  $p_{0x}$ ,  $p_{0y}$  are equal for the  $x$  and  $y$  annihilation and creation operators; we have

$$a_x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{x}{x_0} + i \frac{p_x}{p_0} \right) \quad \text{and} \quad a_y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{y}{x_0} + i \frac{p_y}{p_0} \right),$$

where  $x_0 = \sqrt{\frac{\hbar}{m\omega}}$  and  $p_0 = \frac{\hbar}{x_0}$ .

- The angular momentum operator is  $L_z = xp_y - yp_x$ ; in terms of the annihilation and creation operators this becomes

$$\begin{aligned}L_z &= \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}}(a_x + a_x^\dagger) \cdot \frac{p_0}{\sqrt{2}i}(a_y - a_y^\dagger) - \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}}(a_y + a_y^\dagger) \cdot \frac{p_0}{\sqrt{2}i}(a_x - a_x^\dagger) \\ &= \frac{x_0 p_0}{2i} \left[ (a_x + a_x^\dagger)(a_y - a_y^\dagger) - (a_y + a_y^\dagger)(a_x - a_x^\dagger) \right].\end{aligned}$$

Applying  $x_0 p_0 = \hbar$  and multiplying out the terms in parentheses and combining like terms (recall  $[a_x, a_y] = [a_x^\dagger, a_y^\dagger] = [a_x^\dagger, a_y] = 0$ ) simplifies the expression for  $L_z$  to

$$L_z = \frac{\hbar}{2i} (2a_x^\dagger a_y - 2a_y^\dagger a_x) = \frac{\hbar}{i} (a_x^\dagger a_y - a_y^\dagger a_x).$$

- Next, using the just-derived expression for  $L_z$  in terms of  $a_{x,y}$  and  $a_{x,y}^\dagger$ , we investigate the action of  $L_z$  on our desired state  $|\psi\rangle$ ; we have

$$L_z |\psi\rangle = \alpha L_z |10\rangle + \beta L_z |01\rangle = \frac{\hbar}{i} \alpha (a_x^\dagger a_y - a_x a_y^\dagger) |10\rangle + \frac{\hbar}{i} \beta (a_x^\dagger a_y - a_x a_y^\dagger) |01\rangle.$$

Using the identities  $a|0\rangle = 0$  and  $a|1\rangle = |0\rangle$ , we see that  $a_x^\dagger a_y |10\rangle = 0$ —the  $a_y$  operator acts on the zero  $y$  component of  $|10\rangle$  to produce zero. Analogously,  $a_x a_y^\dagger |01\rangle = 0$ , where  $a_x$  acts on the zero  $x$  component of  $|01\rangle$  to produce zero. We're left with

$$L_z |\psi\rangle = -\frac{\hbar}{i} \alpha a_x |1\rangle a_y^\dagger |0\rangle + \frac{\hbar}{i} \beta a_x^\dagger |0\rangle a_y |1\rangle.$$

Remember  $a_x$  and  $a_y$  act only on their respective components of  $|01\rangle$  and  $|10\rangle$ , which can be factored into  $|0\rangle|1\rangle$  and  $|1\rangle|0\rangle$ . Finally, using the identities  $a^\dagger|0\rangle = |1\rangle$  and  $a^\dagger|1\rangle = \sqrt{2}|2\rangle$ ,  $L_z |\psi\rangle$  simplifies further to

$$L_z |\psi\rangle = -\frac{\hbar}{i} \alpha |0\rangle|1\rangle + \frac{\hbar}{i} \beta |1\rangle|0\rangle = \frac{\hbar}{i} (-\alpha |01\rangle + \beta |10\rangle).$$

- To be an eigenstate of  $L_z$ ,  $|\psi\rangle$  must satisfy the eigenvalue equation  $L_z |\psi\rangle = \lambda |\psi\rangle$ . Using our just-derived expression for  $L_z |\psi\rangle$ , the eigenvalue equation reads

$$L_z |\psi\rangle = \lambda |\psi\rangle \implies \frac{\hbar}{i} (-\alpha |01\rangle + \beta |10\rangle) \equiv \lambda (\alpha |10\rangle + \beta |01\rangle).$$

Multiplying (scalar product on the Hilbert space) the equation from the left by  $\langle 10|$  and applying the orthonormality of  $|00\rangle$  and  $|10\rangle$  leaves

$$\frac{\hbar}{i} \beta = \lambda \alpha,$$

while multiplying the equation from the left by  $\langle 01|$  produces

$$-\frac{\hbar}{i} \alpha = \lambda \beta.$$

In matrix form, these two equations form a simple eigenvalue problem:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{\hbar}{i} \\ -\frac{\hbar}{i} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = \lambda \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix}.$$

We solve the problem by finding the zeros of the characteristic polynomial:

$$\det \begin{bmatrix} -\lambda & \frac{\hbar}{i} \\ -\frac{\hbar}{i} & -\lambda \end{bmatrix} \equiv 0 \implies \lambda^2 - \hbar^2 = 0 \implies \lambda = \pm \hbar.$$

Recall  $L_z$ 's eigenvalues are  $\lambda = m\hbar$ , so we have  $\lambda = \hbar m = \pm \hbar \implies m = \pm 1$  (we had found the same solutions  $m = \pm 1$  in the earlier heuristic approach).

- Substituting the  $m = 1 \implies \lambda = \hbar$  solution into the matrix equation gives

$$\begin{bmatrix} -\hbar & \frac{\hbar}{i} \\ -\frac{\hbar}{i} & -\hbar \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = 0 \implies \beta = i\alpha.$$

Substituting the  $m = 1$  result  $\beta = i\alpha$  into the general linear combination  $|\psi\rangle = \alpha|10\rangle + \beta|01\rangle$  produces

$$|m = 1\rangle = \alpha|10\rangle + (i\alpha)|01\rangle = \alpha(|10\rangle + i|01\rangle).$$

The normalization condition requires  $\alpha = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ , which gives

$$|m = 1\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|10\rangle + i|01\rangle),$$

which agrees with the  $m = 1$  solution in the heuristic approach.

- Substituting the  $m = -1 \implies \lambda = -\hbar$  solution into the matrix equation gives

$$\begin{bmatrix} +\hbar & \frac{\hbar}{i} \\ -\frac{\hbar}{i} & +\hbar \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = 0 \implies \beta = -i\alpha.$$

Analogously to the  $m = 1$  case, substituting the  $m = -1$  result  $\beta = -i\alpha$  into the general linear combination  $|\psi\rangle = \alpha|10\rangle + \beta|01\rangle$  produces

$$|m = -1\rangle = \alpha|10\rangle + (-i\alpha)|01\rangle = \alpha(|10\rangle - i|01\rangle).$$

The normalization condition requires  $\alpha = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ , which gives

$$|m = -1\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|10\rangle - i|01\rangle),$$

which agrees with the  $m = -1$  solution in the heuristic approach.

- The final solution for the eigenstates of  $H$  with energy  $2\hbar\omega$  that are also eigenstates of  $L_z$  is thus

$$\begin{aligned} |m = 1\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|10\rangle + i|01\rangle) \\ |m = -1\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|10\rangle - i|01\rangle). \end{aligned}$$

### Why This Result is Useful

- Next, we ask why we would be interested in finding states that are simultaneously eigenstates of two operators (e.g. both  $H$  and  $L_z$ ). As an example, consider a 2D isotropic harmonic oscillator in an external magnetic field  $\mathbf{B}$ . Its Hamiltonian is

$$H = H_0 - \boldsymbol{\mu} \cdot \mathbf{B},$$

where  $H_0$  is the Hamiltonian of a 2D isotropic harmonic oscillator without a magnetic field and  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  is the particle's magnetic moment. The magnetic moment is proportional to the angular momentum, i.e.  $\boldsymbol{\mu} = \gamma\mathbf{L}$ , where  $\gamma$  is a constant proportionality factor.

- Assume the magnetic field points in the  $z$  direction (i.e.  $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ ) in which case the Hamiltonian simplifies to

$$H = H_0 - \gamma BL_z.$$



In this case, the states that are simultaneously eigenstates of both  $H_0$  and  $L_z$  will also be eigenstates of the Hamiltonian  $H = H_0 - \gamma B L_z$ , which is useful for analyzing particles in a external magnetic field.

For example, using our earlier solutions  $|m = \pm 1\rangle$ , we have the eigenvalue equation

$$\begin{aligned} H |m = \pm 1\rangle &= H_0 |m = \pm 1\rangle - \gamma B L_z |m = \pm 1\rangle \\ &= 2\hbar\omega |m = \pm 1\rangle - \gamma B (\pm 1 \cdot \hbar) |m = \pm 1\rangle \\ &= (2\hbar\omega \pm \gamma B \hbar) |m = \pm 1\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

In other words,  $|m = \pm 1\rangle$  are indeed eigenstates of  $H$ , with eigenvalues  $(2\hbar\omega \pm \gamma B \hbar)$ .

## 8.2 Larmor Precession

*Analyze the motion of a quantum-mechanical particle with magnetic moment  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  and angular momentum quantum number  $l = 1$  in an external magnetic field  $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  forms an initial angle  $\theta$  with  $\mathbf{B}$  at  $t = 0$ .*

- We consider a particle in an external magnetic field  $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{\mathbf{z}}$  whose magnetic moment  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  makes an initial angle  $\theta$  with the magnetic field. The particle's Hamiltonian is

$$H = -\boldsymbol{\mu} \cdot \mathbf{B} = -\gamma \mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{B} = -\gamma B L_z.$$

Recall the values of angular momentum are quantized. In general, a quantum particle with angular momentum quantum number  $l = 1$  exists in a  $2l+1$  dimensional Hilbert space with basis  $|lm\rangle$ , where  $m \in \{-l, -l+1, \dots, l-1, l\}$ . In our case  $l = 1$ , meaning  $m \in \{-1, 0, 1\}$ .

- In Cartesian coordinates, the angular momentum operator is  $\mathbf{L} = (L_x, L_y, L_z)$ . The operator  $L^2$  acts on the state  $|lm\rangle$  as  $L^2 |lm\rangle = \hbar^2 l(l+1) |lm\rangle$ . The operator  $L_z$  acts on  $|lm\rangle$  as  $L_z |lm\rangle = \hbar m |lm\rangle$ . In other words, the basis  $|lm\rangle$  is the basis of states that are eigenstates of the operator  $L^2$  with eigenvalue  $\hbar^2 l(l+1)$  and eigenstates of the operator  $L_z$  with eigenvalue  $\hbar m$ .

In the coordinate wave function representation, the states  $|lm\rangle$  are the spherical harmonics

$$|lm\rangle = Y_{lm}(\phi, \theta).$$

The  $\phi$  component of  $Y_{lm}$  is proportional to  $\frac{e^{im\phi}}{\sqrt{2\pi}}$ .

- We return to the Hamiltonian of a particle with a magnetic moment in an external magnetic field:  $H = -\gamma B L_z$ . For a particle with  $l = 1$  (and thus magnitude of angular momentum  $L^2 = \hbar^2 l(l+1) = 2\hbar^2$ ), the Hamiltonian's eigenstates  $|\psi\rangle$  occurs in a  $2l+1 = 3$  dimensional Hilbert space. In the  $|lm\rangle$  basis, the general expression for  $|\psi\rangle$  is thus the linear combination

$$|\psi\rangle = a |11\rangle + b |10\rangle + c |1-1\rangle,$$

where  $l = 1$  and  $m = 1, 0, -1$ .

- At  $t = 0$ , the particle's magnetic moment forms a polar angle  $\theta$  with the magnetic field  $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ . Our first step will be finding an appropriate expression for this initial condition in the language of quantum mechanics.

### Finding the Initial State

- In general, if some state  $|\psi\rangle$  is an eigenstate of the operator  $\mathbf{L} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}}$ , (i.e. the projection of angular momentum  $\mathbf{L}$  in the direction  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}$ ), and the operator acts on  $\psi$  as

$$\mathbf{L} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}} |\psi\rangle = \hbar l |\psi\rangle,$$

then we say the state  $|\psi\rangle$ 's angular momentum points in the direction  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}$ .

Back to the initial condition. We write  $\mathbf{L} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}} |\psi, 0\rangle = \hbar |\psi, 0\rangle$  where  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}$  points in the initial direction of the magnetic moment  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ . If we assume the magnitude moment initially lies in the  $x, z$  plane with  $\phi = 0$ , the unit vector  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}$ , in spherical coordinates, reads

$$\hat{\mathbf{e}} = (\sin \theta, 0, \cos \theta).$$

To summarize, the quantum mechanical way of saying the particle's magnetic moment forms an initial angle  $\theta$  with the magnetic field  $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{\mathbf{z}}$  is

$$\mathbf{L} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}} |\psi, 0\rangle = \hbar |\psi, 0\rangle,$$

where  $|\psi, 0\rangle$  is the particle's initial wave function and  $\hat{\mathbf{e}} = (\sin \theta, 0, \cos \theta)$ .

- To find  $|\psi, 0\rangle$ , we need to find the constants  $a, b, c$  in the linear combination  $|\psi\rangle = a|11\rangle + b|10\rangle + c|1-1\rangle$ . Inserting  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}$  into the condition  $\mathbf{L} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}} |\psi, 0\rangle = \hbar |\psi, 0\rangle$  gives

$$(L_x \sin \theta + L_z \cos \theta) |\psi, 0\rangle = \hbar |\psi, 0\rangle.$$

Substituting in the linear combination  $|\psi\rangle = a|11\rangle + b|10\rangle + c|1-1\rangle$  and rearranging gives

$$(L_x \sin \theta + L_z \cos \theta - \hbar)(a|11\rangle + b|10\rangle + c|1-1\rangle) = 0.$$

### Theoretical Interlude: Action of $L_{x,y}$ on $|lm\rangle$

- Recall the eigenvalue equation  $L_z |lm\rangle = \hbar m |lm\rangle$  for the operator  $L_z$ . We now ask how  $L_x$  and  $L_y$  act on the states  $|lm\rangle$ . To do this, we introduce the new operators

$$L_+ \equiv L_x + iL_y \quad \text{and} \quad L_- \equiv L_+^\dagger = L_x - iL_y.$$

In terms of  $L_+$  and  $L_-$ ,  $L_x$  and  $L_y$  read

$$L_x = \frac{L_+ + L_-}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad L_y = \frac{L_+ - L_-}{2i}.$$

The plan is to find out how  $L_+$  and  $L_-$  act on  $|lm\rangle$ , and then reconstruct the action of  $L_x$  and  $L_y$  on  $|lm\rangle$  using the relationship between  $L_{+,-}$  and  $L_{x,y}$ .

- Without proof (or e.g. see the lecture notes),  $L_+$  acts on  $|lm\rangle$  as

$$\begin{aligned} L_+ |lm\rangle &= \hbar \sqrt{l(l+1) - m(m+1)} |l, m+1\rangle \\ L_- |lm\rangle &= \hbar \sqrt{l(l+1) - m(m-1)} |l, m-1\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

- In our case (working with a particle with  $l = 1$  and thus  $m \in \{-1, 0, 1\}$ ), we have  $L_+ |11\rangle = 0$  (nominally this would create a state with  $m = 2$ , outside the range of allowed  $m$ ). In general,  $L_+ |l, m=l\rangle = 0$ , since  $m$  cannot increase beyond  $l$ .

Next,  $L_+ |10\rangle = \sqrt{2}\hbar |11\rangle$  and  $L_+ |1-1\rangle = \sqrt{2}\hbar |10\rangle$ .

Meanwhile,  $L_-$  produces  $L_- |11\rangle = \sqrt{2}\hbar |10\rangle$ ,  $L_- |10\rangle = \sqrt{2}\hbar |1-1\rangle$  and  $L_- |1-1\rangle = 0$ , since  $m$  cannot decrease below  $l = 0$ . In general,  $L_- |l, m=-l\rangle = 0$ , since  $m$  cannot decrease below  $-l$ .

## Back to Finding the Initial State

- We left off with

$$(L_x \sin \theta + L_z \cos \theta - \hbar)(a|11\rangle + b|10\rangle + c|1-1\rangle) = 0.$$

Writing  $L_{x,y}$  in terms of  $L_{+,-}$  and substituting the just-derived action of  $L_{+,-}$  on  $|11\rangle, |10\rangle$  and  $|1-1\rangle$  gives

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \left( \frac{L_+ + L_-}{2} \sin \theta + L_z \cos \theta - \hbar \right) (a|11\rangle + b|10\rangle + c|1-1\rangle) \\ &= a \left( \frac{\sqrt{2}\hbar}{2} |10\rangle \sin \theta + \hbar \cos \theta |11\rangle - \hbar |11\rangle \right) \\ &\quad + b \left( \frac{\sqrt{2}\hbar}{2} |11\rangle \sin \theta + \frac{\sqrt{2}\hbar}{2} \sin \theta |1-1\rangle - \hbar |10\rangle \right) \\ &\quad + c \left( \frac{\sqrt{2}\hbar}{2} |10\rangle \sin \theta - \hbar \cos \theta |1-1\rangle - \hbar |1-1\rangle \right). \end{aligned}$$

Notice that this equation now involves only scalar values; all operators are gone.

- Next, we find the constants  $a, b$  and  $c$ . First, divide through by  $\hbar$ , which cancels out from each equation. Next, multiplying the above equations by  $\langle 11|$  and applying orthonormality of the states  $|11\rangle, |10\rangle, |1-1\rangle$ , we have

$$a \cos \theta - a + \frac{b}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \theta = 0.$$

Next, multiplying the equation by  $|10\rangle$  gives

$$\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \theta - b + \frac{c}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \theta = 0.$$

Finally, multiplying the equation by  $|1-1\rangle$  gives

$$\frac{b}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \theta - c \cos \theta - c = 0.$$

- We've found a system of three equations for the three unknowns  $a, b$  and  $c$ . Recall from e.g. introductory linear algebra that because the system of equations is homogeneous (the right side of each equation is zero), the system has a solution only up to a free parameter.

Solving the first equation for  $a$  in terms of  $b$  gives

$$a(\cos \theta - 1) + \frac{b}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \theta = 0 \implies a = \frac{b \sin \theta}{\sqrt{2}(1 - \cos \theta)}.$$

From the third equation, we get  $c$  in terms of  $b$ :

$$\frac{b}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \theta - c(1 + \cos \theta) = 0 \implies c = \frac{b \sin \theta}{\sqrt{2}(1 + \cos \theta)}.$$

- The solution is easier to find with  $\sin \theta$  and  $\cos \theta$  written in terms of double angle identities, which produce

$$a = \frac{b}{\sqrt{2}} \cot \frac{\theta}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad c = \frac{b}{\sqrt{2}} \tan \frac{\theta}{2}.$$

- With  $a$  and  $c$  known in terms of the free parameter  $b$ , the initial condition on  $|\psi, 0\rangle$  reads

$$|\psi, 0\rangle = b \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \cot \frac{\theta}{2} |11\rangle + |10\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tan \frac{\theta}{2} |1-1\rangle \right).$$

We find  $b$  from the normalization condition, which, with the help of some trigonometric identities, reads

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \psi, 0 | \psi, 0 \rangle \equiv 1 &= |b|^2 \left( \frac{1}{2} \cot^2 \frac{\theta}{2} + 1 + \frac{1}{2} \tan^2 \frac{\theta}{2} \right) = |b|^2 \left( \frac{\cos^4 \frac{\theta}{2} + 2 \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} + \sin^4 \frac{\theta}{2}}{2 \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2}} \right) \\ &= |b|^2 \frac{(\cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} + \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2})^2}{2 \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2}} = \frac{|b|^2}{2 \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2}} \equiv 1. \end{aligned}$$

Because of the  $|b|^2$ ,  $b$  is mathematically determined only up to a constant phase factor  $e^{i\phi}$  of magnitude 1; if we make the simple choice  $e^{i\phi} = 1$ , the normalization condition gives

$$b = \sqrt{2} \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2}.$$

- Substituting  $b = \sqrt{2} \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2}$  into the expression for  $|\psi, 0\rangle$  gives the desired result

$$|\psi, 0\rangle = \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} |11\rangle + \sqrt{2} \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2} |10\rangle + \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} |1-1\rangle.$$

To summarize: precisely this state  $|\psi, 0\rangle$  satisfies the initial condition that a particle's magnitude moment  $\mu$  makes an angle  $\theta$  with an external magnetic field  $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{z}$ .

### Time Evolution of the Initial State

- With the initial state  $|\psi, 0\rangle$  known, the next step is to find the time-dependent wave function  $|\psi, t\rangle$  for a particle with magnetic moment  $\mu$  in an external magnetic field. We'll find the time evolution in the Schrödinger picture using the particle's Hamiltonian  $H = -\gamma B L_z$ .
- We'll first solve the stationary Schrödinger equation  $H|\psi\rangle = E|\psi\rangle$  for the basis functions  $|11\rangle$ ,  $|10\rangle$  and  $|1-1\rangle$ ; this gives

$$\begin{aligned} H|11\rangle &= -\gamma B L_z |11\rangle = -\gamma B(1 \cdot \hbar) |11\rangle = -\gamma B \hbar |11\rangle \\ H|10\rangle &= -\gamma B L_z |10\rangle = -\gamma B(0 \cdot \hbar) |10\rangle = 0 |10\rangle \\ H|1-1\rangle &= -\gamma B L_z |1-1\rangle = -\gamma B(-1 \cdot \hbar) |1-1\rangle = \gamma B \hbar |1-1\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

- Using the energy eigenvalues  $E_{11} = -\gamma B \hbar$ ,  $E_{10} = 0$  and  $E_{1-1} = \gamma B \hbar$ , the time-evolved wave function  $|\psi, t\rangle$  is then

$$\begin{aligned} |\psi, t\rangle &= \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{-\frac{i(-\gamma B \hbar)t}{\hbar}} |11\rangle + \sqrt{2} \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2} e^{-\frac{i \cdot 0 \cdot t}{\hbar}} |10\rangle + \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{-\frac{i \gamma B \hbar t}{\hbar}} |1-1\rangle \\ &= \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{i \gamma B t} |11\rangle + \sqrt{2} \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2} |10\rangle + \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{-\gamma B t} |1-1\rangle \\ &= \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{i \omega_L t} |11\rangle + \sqrt{2} \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2} |10\rangle + \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{-\omega_L t} |1-1\rangle, \end{aligned}$$

where in the last line we've defined the *Larmor frequency*  $\omega_L \equiv \gamma B$ . The time evolution is relatively simple to find because the initial state  $|\psi, 0\rangle$  was already written in the basis  $|11\rangle, |10\rangle, |1-1\rangle$ .

- Next, using the wave function  $|\psi, t\rangle$ , we will find the expectation value  $\langle \boldsymbol{\mu}, t \rangle$  of the particle's magnetic moment at time  $t$ , which is related to angular momentum  $\mathbf{L}$  via

$$\langle \boldsymbol{\mu}, t \rangle = \gamma \langle \mathbf{L}, t \rangle = \gamma \begin{bmatrix} \langle L_x, t \rangle \\ \langle L_y, t \rangle \\ \langle L_z, t \rangle \end{bmatrix}.$$

We'll start by finding  $L_z$ , using the general definition of an expectation value:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle L_z, t \rangle &= \langle \psi, t | L_z | \psi, t \rangle = \left( \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{-i\omega_L t} \langle 11 | + \sqrt{2} \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2} \langle 10 | + \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{i\omega_L t} \langle 1-1 | \right) \\ &\quad \cdot L_z \left( \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{i\omega_L t} | 11 \rangle + 0 - \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{-i\omega_L t} | 1-1 \rangle \right), \end{aligned}$$

where the operator  $L_z$  acts on the basis states  $|11\rangle, |10\rangle$  and  $|1-1\rangle$  to produce the eigenvalues  $\hbar, 0$  and  $-\hbar$ . Multiplying out the terms and applying the orthonormality of the basis states, followed by some trigonometric identities, leads to the considerably simpler expression

$$\begin{aligned} \langle L_z, t \rangle &= \hbar \cos^4 \frac{\theta}{2} - \hbar \sin^4 \frac{\theta}{2} = \hbar \left( \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} + \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} \right) \left( \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} - \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} \right) \\ &= \hbar \cdot (1) \cdot (\cos \theta) = \hbar \cos \theta. \end{aligned}$$

In other words, the  $z$  component of angular momentum  $L_z$  is constant!

*We ran out of time at this point and continued in the ninth exercise set*

## 9 Ninth Exercise Set

### 9.1 Larmor Precession (continued)

Analyze the motion of a quantum-mechanical particle with magnetic moment  $\mu$  and angular momentum quantum number  $l = 1$  in an external magnetic field  $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ , where  $\mu$  forms an initial angle  $\theta$  with  $\mathbf{B}$  at  $t = 0$ .

- In the last exercise set we found the particle's time-dependent wave function

$$|\psi, t\rangle = \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{i\omega_L t} |11\rangle + \sqrt{2} \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2} |10\rangle + \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{-i\omega_L t} |1-1\rangle,$$

where  $\omega_L \equiv \gamma B$  is the Larmor frequency. We left off with using  $|\psi, t\rangle$  to find the expectation value  $\langle L_z, t \rangle$ , which turned out to be the constant quantity  $\hbar \cos \theta$ . Next, we will use  $|\psi, t\rangle$  to find  $L_x$  and  $L_y$ , which we will use to find the particle's magnetic moment via  $\langle \boldsymbol{\mu}, t \rangle = \gamma (\langle L_x, t \rangle, \langle L_y, t \rangle, \langle L_z, t \rangle)$ .

- It will be easiest to find  $\langle L_x, t \rangle$  and  $\langle L_y, t \rangle$  indirectly, in terms of the operators  $L_+$  and  $L_-$ ; recall these are related by

$$\begin{aligned} L_+ &= L_x + iL_y & \text{and} & & L_- &= L_x - iL_y \\ L_x &= \frac{L_+ + L_-}{2} & \text{and} & & L_y &= \frac{L_+ - iL_-}{2i}. \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $\langle L_x, t \rangle$  and  $\langle L_y, t \rangle$  can be found via

$$\langle L_x, t \rangle = \frac{1}{2}(\langle L_+, t \rangle + \langle L_-, t \rangle) \quad \text{and} \quad \langle L_y, t \rangle = \frac{1}{2i}(\langle L_+, t \rangle - \langle L_-, t \rangle).$$

In fact,  $\langle L_-, t \rangle = \langle L_+, t \rangle^*$  is the complex conjugate of  $\langle L_+, t \rangle$ , so we only need to find  $\langle L_+, t \rangle$ , from which we can find  $\langle L_-, t \rangle$  using the general identity  $\langle \mathcal{O}^\dagger \rangle = \langle \mathcal{O} \rangle^*$ . We then have

$$\begin{aligned} \langle L_x, t \rangle &= \frac{1}{2}(\langle L_+, t \rangle + \langle L_+, t \rangle^*) = \text{Re} \langle L_+, t \rangle \\ \langle L_y, t \rangle &= \frac{1}{2i}(\langle L_+, t \rangle - \langle L_+, t \rangle^*) = \text{Im} \langle L_+, t \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

- We now find  $\langle L_+, t \rangle$  using the definition of the expectation value (we'll use the identities  $L_+ |1, -1\rangle = \sqrt{2}\hbar |10\rangle$ ,  $L_+ |10\rangle = \sqrt{2}\hbar |11\rangle$ , and  $L_+ |11\rangle = 0$ ). The expectation value  $\langle L_+, t \rangle$  is then:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle L_+, t \rangle &= \langle \psi, t | L_+ | \psi, t \rangle = \langle \psi, t | \left( 2\hbar \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2} |11\rangle + \sqrt{2}\hbar \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{-i\omega_L t} |10\rangle \right) \\ &= \left( \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{-i\omega_L t} \right) \cdot \left( 2\hbar \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2} \right) + \left( \sqrt{2} \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2} \right) \left( \sqrt{2}\hbar \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{-i\omega_L t} \right) \\ &= 2\hbar \cos \frac{\theta}{2} \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \left( \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} + \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} \right) e^{-i\omega_L t} = \hbar \sin \theta e^{-i\omega_L t}. \end{aligned}$$

The angular momentum components  $\langle L_x, t \rangle$  and  $\langle L_y, t \rangle$  are then

$$\begin{aligned} \langle L_x, t \rangle &= \text{Re} \langle L_+, t \rangle = \hbar \sin \theta \cos(\omega_L t) \\ \langle L_y, t \rangle &= \text{Im} \langle L_+, t \rangle = \hbar \sin \theta \sin(\omega_L t). \end{aligned}$$

In one place, the components of angular momentum are

$$\langle L_x, t \rangle = \hbar \sin \theta \cos(\omega_L t) \quad \langle L_y, t \rangle = \hbar \sin \theta \sin(\omega_L t) \quad \langle L_z, t \rangle = \hbar \cos \theta.$$

In other words, analogously to the classical picture, the expectation values  $\langle L_x, t \rangle$  and  $\langle L_y, t \rangle$  precess around the direction of the external magnetic field  $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{\mathbf{z}}$  with the Larmor frequency  $\omega_L = \gamma B$ .

- Recall that an physical measurement (observation) generally disturbs quantum mechanical systems. With this issue in mind, we'll find what happens with an observation of  $L_z$  at the time  $t$ .

### Theoretical Interlude: Observations in Quantum Mechanics

- We make an observation of a physical quantity in quantum mechanics as follows. First, expand the relevant system's wave function in the basis consisting of the eigenfunctions of the operator corresponding to the quantity being measured (e.g. to measure a system's  $L_z$ , expand the system wave function in the  $L_z$  basis  $|lm\rangle$ .)
- The possible outcomes of the observation are the discrete eigenvalues of the operator corresponding to the quantity being measured.

When the wavefunction is a linear combination of multiple eigenstates, each of the states' corresponding eigenvalues is a possible outcome, and the probability of each eigenvalue being the outcome is the squared absolute value of the corresponding eigenstate's coefficient.

Eigenstate	Outcome	Probability
$ 11\rangle$	$\hbar$	$ \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{-i\omega_L t}  = \cos^4 \frac{\theta}{2}$
$ 10\rangle$	0	$2 \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2}$
$ 1-1\rangle$	$-\hbar$	$ \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{-i\omega_L t}  = \sin^4 \frac{\theta}{2}$

Table 1: Ingredients to consider in a measurement of an  $l = 1$  Larmor-precessing particle's angular momentum  $L_z$ .

- Finally, immediately after an observation yielding a given eigenvalue, the system's wavefunction assumes ("collapses into") the eigenfunction corresponding to the measured eigenvalue.

### Back to the Observation of $L_z$

- Our particle's wave function  $|\psi, t\rangle$  is already expanded in  $L_z$  basis  $|lm\rangle$ ; recall the wave function is

$$|\psi, t\rangle = \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{i\omega_L t} |11\rangle + \sqrt{2} \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2} |10\rangle + \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} e^{-i\omega_L t} |1-1\rangle.$$

- Next, we consider the possible outcome of the observation of  $L_z$ . Our wavefunction is a combination of three states  $|11\rangle$ ,  $|10\rangle$  and  $|1-1\rangle$ ; the corresponding  $L_z$  eigenvalues of these states are  $\hbar$ , 0 and  $-\hbar$ , and the corresponding probabilities are the squared absolute values of the corresponding eigenstate's coefficients. Table 1 summarizes the eigenstates, possible outcomes, and corresponding probabilities.
- Because of wavefunction collapse to the measured eigenvalue's corresponding eigenfunction, any measurement of  $L_z$  would cause the particle's eigenfunction to stop precessing at a polar angle  $\theta$  about the magnetic field  $\mathbf{B} = B\hat{\mathbf{z}}$  in agreement with classical Larmor precession.

For example, measuring  $L_z = \hbar$  would cause the particle to assume the eigenfunction  $|11\rangle$ , which directly points in the direction of the magnetic field and  $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$  axis.

The lesson here is that even though the classical and quantum-mechanical results for a particle with magnetic moment  $\mu$  in an external magnetic field both display Larmor precession about the  $\hat{\mathbf{B}}$  direction, any observation of the quantum-mechanical observation of the system breaks this agreement because of wave function collapse.

## 9.2 Rashba Coupling

Consider a particle in the two-dimensional  $x, y$  plane with magnitude of spin  $s = 1/2$  and Hamiltonian

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \lambda(p_x S_y - p_y S_x),$$

where  $\mathbf{p} = (p_x, p_y, 0)$  and  $\mathbf{S} = (S_x, S_y, S_z)$  are the momentum and spin operators and  $\lambda$  is a constant.<sup>1</sup> Find the Hamiltonian  $H$ 's eigenfunctions and eigenvalues.

### Spin and Momentum States

- The Hamiltonian  $H$  acts on states in the combined Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}_p \otimes \mathcal{H}_s$  where  $\mathcal{H}_p$  is the momentum Hilbert space and  $\mathcal{H}_s$  is the spin Hilbert space. Analogously, the states in  $\mathcal{H}$  are  $|\psi\rangle = |\psi_p\rangle \otimes |\psi_s\rangle$ .

<sup>1</sup>The term  $\lambda(p_x S_y - p_y S_x)$  is called the *Rashba coupling term*, which gives this problem its name.

- Since we're working with states with spin magnitude  $s = \frac{1}{2}$  and thus  $z$  component  $m_s \in \{-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\}$ , the spin wavefunction  $\psi_s$  is the linear combination

$$|\psi_s\rangle = \alpha \left| \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle + \beta \left| \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle,$$

where  $|sm_s\rangle$  is the basis of the spin operator  $S^2$ — $s$  is the spin quantum number and  $m_s$  is the quantum number corresponding to the projection of spin on the  $z$  axis. The spin operator  $S^2$  acts on the spin basis states to produce

$$\begin{aligned} S^2 \left| \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle &= \hbar^2 \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{2} + 1 \right) \left| \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle = \hbar^2 \frac{3}{4} \left| \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle \\ S^2 \left| \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle &= \hbar^2 \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{2} + 1 \right) \left| \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle = \hbar^2 \frac{3}{4} \left| \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

- Meanwhile, the operator  $S_z$  acts on the basis states to produce

$$S_z \left| \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle = \frac{\hbar}{2} \left| \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad S_z \left| \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle = -\frac{\hbar}{2} \left| \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle,$$

When working with particles with spin  $s = 1/2$ , we usually denote the states  $|\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2}\rangle$  and  $|\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\rangle$  with  $|\uparrow\rangle$  and  $|\downarrow\rangle$ , respectively. In this notation, our spin wavefunction is

$$|\psi_s\rangle = \alpha |\uparrow\rangle + \beta |\downarrow\rangle.$$

In our case, the spin Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}_s$  is two-dimensional, since it consists of all linear combinations of the two linearly independent states  $|\uparrow\rangle$  and  $|\downarrow\rangle$ .

- Next, on to the momentum states  $|\psi_p\rangle$ , which correspond to the kinetic energy operator. The eigenstates of the kinetic energy operator are plane waves of the form  $e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}$ . Because the wave vectors  $\mathbf{k}$  are continuously distributed and  $\mathbf{k}$  generates a unique set of eigenvalues, the position space  $\mathcal{H}_p$  is infinitely dimensional.

### Finding Eigenfunctions and Eigenvalues

- To find the Hamiltonian's eigenfunctions and eigenvalues, we need to solve the stationary Schrödinger equation

$$H|\psi\rangle = E|\psi\rangle.$$

First, to make the rest of the problem easier, we will show that  $H$  commutes with the operator  $\mathbf{p}$ , which reduces to showing  $H$  commutes with  $p_x$ ,  $p_y$  and  $p_z$ . First:

$$[H, p_x] = \left[ \frac{p_x^2 + p_y^2}{2m} + \lambda(p_x S_y - p_y S_x), p_x \right].$$

The operators  $p_x^2$  and  $p_x$  commute, as do  $p_y^2$  and  $p_x$ , which takes care of the first term. Next, we consider the Rashba coupling term  $(p_x S_y - p_y S_x)$ . Because the  $S_{y,x}$  operators act on the spin Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}_s$  and  $p_x$  acts on the independent momentum Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}_p$ , and because  $p_x$  commutes with both  $p_x$  and  $p_y$ , the operator  $p_x$  also commutes with the Rashba term  $(p_x S_y - p_y S_x)$ . It follows that

$$[H, p_x] = 0.$$

We can show  $[H, p_y] = 0$  with an analogous procedure. Finally, since  $p_z = 0$ , the identity  $[H, p_z] = 0$  is trivial—it isn't even strictly necessary, since our particle's momentum is confined to the  $xy$  plane.



- Next, recall that if two operators commute, it is possible to find eigenfunctions that are simultaneously eigenfunctions of both operators (see e.g. the 2D harmonic oscillator problem in Subsection 7.2). In our case, because  $\mathbf{p} = (p_x, p_y, 0)$  and  $H$  commute,  $\mathbf{p}$ 's eigenfunctions will also be  $H$ 's eigenfunctions, and instead of finding  $H$ 's eigenfunctions, we can search for  $\mathbf{p}$ 's eigenfunctions instead, which is easier.
- To find  $\mathbf{p}$ 's eigenfunctions, we would solve the equation

$$\mathbf{p} |\psi\rangle = a |\psi\rangle \quad \text{or} \quad \mathbf{p} |\psi_p\rangle \otimes |p_s\rangle = a |\psi_p\rangle \otimes |p_s\rangle.$$

I've used  $a$  instead of the conventional  $\lambda$  to denote the eigenvalue to avoid confusion with the Rashba coupling parameter  $\lambda$ . Since  $\mathbf{p}$  acts only on the momentum Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}_p$  (and thus only on  $|\psi_p\rangle$  and not  $|p_s\rangle$ ), we can immediately simplify to the purely momentum equation

$$\mathbf{p} |\psi_p\rangle = a |\psi_p\rangle \quad \text{where } \mathbf{p} = -i\hbar\nabla.$$

Recall the momentum eigenfunctions are plane waves of the form  $e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}$ , for which the eigenvalue equation in the coordinate wavefunction representation reads

$$\mathbf{p} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} = -i\hbar\nabla e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} = -i\hbar(i\mathbf{k}) e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} = \hbar\mathbf{k} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}.$$

In Dirac notation, the equation reads

$$\mathbf{p} |\mathbf{k}\rangle = \hbar\mathbf{k} |\mathbf{k}\rangle,$$

where the eigenstate  $|\mathbf{k}\rangle$  corresponds to the wavefunction  $e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}$  and the eigenvalue is  $\hbar\mathbf{k} = \hbar(k_x, k_y)$ .

- Returning to the stationary Schrödinger equation and using  $|\psi_p\rangle = |\mathbf{k}\rangle$  we have

$$H |\psi\rangle = H (|\psi_p\rangle \otimes |\psi_s\rangle) = H (|\mathbf{k}\rangle \otimes |\psi_s\rangle) = E (|\mathbf{k}\rangle \otimes |\psi_s\rangle).$$

Again, the replacement of  $|\psi_p\rangle$  with  $|\mathbf{k}\rangle$  in the Schrödinger equation is possible only because  $H$  and  $\mathbf{p}$  commute. We have thus reduced our problem to finding spin wavefunctions  $|\psi_s\rangle$ .

*Notation:* In practice, we drop the tensor product symbol  $\otimes$ ; in this convention the above stationary Schrödinger reads

$$H (|\mathbf{k}\rangle |\psi_s\rangle) = E (|\mathbf{k}\rangle |\psi_s\rangle).$$

- Next, substituting the Rashba-coupled Hamiltonian  $H$  into the equation  $H (|\mathbf{k}\rangle |\psi_s\rangle) = E (|\mathbf{k}\rangle |\psi_s\rangle)$  and noting that each operator in the Hamiltonian acts either only on the momentum function  $|\mathbf{k}\rangle$  or only on the spin function  $|\psi_s\rangle$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} H (|\mathbf{k}\rangle |\psi_s\rangle) &= \left[ \frac{p^2}{2m} + \lambda(p_x S_y - p_y S_x) \right] (|\mathbf{k}\rangle |\psi_s\rangle) \\ &= \left( \frac{p^2}{2m} |\mathbf{k}\rangle \right) |\psi_s\rangle + \lambda(p_x |\mathbf{k}\rangle S_y |\psi_s\rangle - p_y |\mathbf{k}\rangle S_x |\psi_s\rangle) \\ &= \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} |\mathbf{k}\rangle |\psi_s\rangle + \lambda \hbar k_x |\mathbf{k}\rangle S_y |\psi_s\rangle - \lambda \hbar k_y |\mathbf{k}\rangle S_x |\psi_s\rangle \\ &\equiv E |\mathbf{k}\rangle |\psi_s\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

Next, to eliminate  $|\mathbf{k}\rangle$  we multiply the equation from the left by  $\langle \mathbf{k}|$  to get

$$\frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} |\psi_s\rangle + \lambda \hbar (k_x S_y - k_y S_x) |\psi_s\rangle = E |\psi_s\rangle.$$

We're now left with an equation containing only the spin wavefunction  $|\psi_s\rangle$ .

### Theoretical Interlude: Spin Ladder Operators

- Recall that for a particle with spin  $s = 1/2$ , the function  $|\psi_s\rangle$  is an element of the two-dimensional spin Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}_s$  and is written as the linear combination

$$|\psi_s\rangle = \alpha |\uparrow\rangle + \beta |\downarrow\rangle.$$

- Just like it is more convenient to write the orbital angular momentum components  $L_x$  and  $L_y$  in terms of the ladder operators  $L_+$  and  $L_-$ , it is best to analyze  $S_x$  and  $S_y$  in terms of the analogously defined operators  $S_+$  and  $S_-$ , which read

$$\begin{aligned} S_+ &= S_x + iS_y & \text{and} & & S_- &= S_x - iS_y \\ S_x &= \frac{S_+ + S_-}{2} & \text{and} & & S_y &= \frac{S_+ - S_-}{2i}. \end{aligned}$$

The operators  $S_+$  and  $S_-$  act on the spin basis states  $|sm\rangle$  to produce

$$\begin{aligned} S_+ |sm\rangle &= \hbar \sqrt{s(s+1) - m(m+1)} |s, m+1\rangle \\ S_- |sm\rangle &= \hbar \sqrt{s(s+1) - m(m-1)} |s, m-1\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

### Back to Our Problem

- First, some useful intermediate results:

$$\begin{aligned} S_+ |\uparrow\rangle &\equiv S_+ \left| \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle &= & 0 \\ S_+ |\downarrow\rangle &\equiv S_+ \left| \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle &= & \hbar |\uparrow\rangle \\ S_- |\uparrow\rangle &\equiv S_- \left| \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle &= & \hbar |\downarrow\rangle \\ S_- |\downarrow\rangle &\equiv S_- \left| \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle &= & 0. \end{aligned}$$

The first and last identities hold from a physical interpretation since  $m$  cannot increase beyond  $s = 1/2$  or decrease below  $s = -1/2$ , respectively.

- In terms of  $S_+$  and  $S_-$  and using the above intermediate results,  $S_x$  and  $S_y$  act on  $|\psi_s\rangle$  to produce

$$\begin{aligned} S_x |\psi_s\rangle &= \frac{S_+ + S_-}{2} (\alpha |\uparrow\rangle + \beta |\downarrow\rangle) = \frac{\hbar}{2} (\alpha |\downarrow\rangle + \beta |\uparrow\rangle) \\ S_y |\psi_s\rangle &= \frac{S_+ - S_-}{2i} (\alpha |\uparrow\rangle + \beta |\downarrow\rangle) = \frac{\hbar}{2i} (-\alpha |\downarrow\rangle + \beta |\uparrow\rangle). \end{aligned}$$

- We can now evaluate the earlier eigenvalue equation for  $|\psi_s\rangle$ , i.e.

$$\frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} |\psi_s\rangle + \lambda \hbar (k_x S_y - k_y S_x) |\psi_s\rangle = E |\psi_s\rangle.$$

Using the just-derived action of  $S_x$  and  $S_y$  act on  $|\psi_s\rangle$ , we have

$$\frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} (\alpha |\uparrow\rangle + \beta |\downarrow\rangle) + \frac{\lambda k_x \hbar^2}{2i} (-\alpha |\downarrow\rangle + \beta |\uparrow\rangle) - \frac{\lambda k_y \hbar^2}{2} (\alpha |\downarrow\rangle + \beta |\uparrow\rangle) = E (\alpha |\uparrow\rangle + \beta |\downarrow\rangle).$$

Note that this equation contains only scalar values and the two linearly independent states  $|\downarrow\rangle$  and  $|\uparrow\rangle$ —all operators are gone from the equation.

- Multiplying the equation from the left by  $\langle \uparrow |$  and applying the orthonormality of  $|\downarrow\rangle$  and  $|\uparrow\rangle$  produces

$$\frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \alpha + \frac{\lambda \hbar^2 k_x}{2i} \beta - \frac{\lambda \hbar^2 k_y}{2} \beta = E \alpha,$$

while multiplying the equation from the left by  $\langle \downarrow |$  produces

$$\frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \beta - \frac{\lambda \hbar^2 k_x}{2i} \alpha - \frac{\lambda \hbar^2 k_y}{2} \alpha = E \beta.$$

We have a system of two equations for the two unknown coefficients  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ ; in matrix form this system reads

$$\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} & \frac{\lambda \hbar^2}{2i} (k_x - i k_y) \\ -\frac{\lambda \hbar^2}{2i} (k_x + i k_y) & \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = E \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix},$$

which is an  $(2 \times 2)$  eigenvalue problem.

- Before tackling the eigenvalue problem, we'll write the 2D wave vector  $\mathbf{k} = (k_x, k_y)$  in polar coordinates:

$$k_x + i k_y = k e^{i\phi} \quad \text{and} \quad k_x - i k_y = k e^{-i\phi}.$$

With  $\mathbf{k}$  written in polar coordinates, the eigenvalue equation reads

$$\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} & \frac{\lambda \hbar^2}{2i} k e^{-i\phi} \\ -\frac{\lambda \hbar^2}{2i} k e^{i\phi} & \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = E \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix}.$$

We find the energy eigenvalues from the zeros of the characteristic polynomial

$$p(E) = \det \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} - E & \frac{\lambda \hbar^2}{2i} k e^{-i\phi} \\ -\frac{\lambda \hbar^2}{2i} k e^{i\phi} & \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} - E \end{bmatrix} = \left( \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} - E \right)^2 - \left( \frac{\lambda \hbar^2 k}{2} \right)^2.$$

We want to find the  $E$  such that  $p(E) = 0$ , i.e. solving

$$\left( \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} - E \right)^2 = \left( \frac{\lambda \hbar^2 k}{2} \right)^2.$$

Squaring both sides and solving for  $E$  gives

$$E_{\pm} = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \pm \frac{\lambda \hbar^2 k}{2}.$$

Note that the case  $\lambda = 0$ , which corresponds to zero coupling, recovers the free-particle energy  $E = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}$ . In this case we have energy degeneracy 2 for each  $\mathbf{k}$ , since the two linearly independent eigenfunctions corresponding  $\pm k$  have the same energy eigenvalue  $E = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}$ .

For  $\lambda \neq 0$ , in the presence of Rashba coupling, the degeneracy is broken, since the states with  $\pm k$  have different energies  $E_{\pm}$ , shifted up or down from the free particle energy by the quantity  $\frac{\lambda \hbar^2 k}{2}$ .

- Next, we consider the eigenstates. In the degenerate case  $\lambda = 0$ , we have

$$H |\mathbf{k}\rangle (\alpha |\uparrow\rangle + \beta |\downarrow\rangle) = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} (\alpha |\uparrow\rangle + \beta |\downarrow\rangle).$$

for each  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ . In other words, when  $\lambda = 0$ , any linear combination  $|\psi_s\rangle = (\alpha |\uparrow\rangle + \beta |\downarrow\rangle)$  is an eigenstate of the Hamiltonian with the energy eigenvalue  $\frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}$ .

- When  $\lambda \neq 0$ , only two unique linear combination of  $|\uparrow\rangle$  and  $|\downarrow\rangle$  will be eigenstates of the Hamiltonian; we find these states by finding the eigenvectors of the earlier eigenvalue problem

$$\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} - E & \frac{\lambda \hbar^2}{2i} k e^{-i\phi} \\ -\frac{\lambda \hbar^2}{2i} k e^{i\phi} & \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} - E \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = 0.$$

Substituting in the two energy eigenvalues  $E_{\pm} = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \pm \frac{\lambda \hbar^2 k}{2}$  gives

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mp \frac{\lambda \hbar^2 k}{2} & \frac{\lambda \hbar^2}{2i} k e^{-i\phi} \\ \frac{\lambda \hbar^2}{2i} k e^{i\phi} & \mp \frac{\lambda \hbar^2 k}{2} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = 0.$$

Multiplying the matrices leads to the equation

$$\mp \frac{\lambda \hbar^2 k}{2} \alpha + \frac{\lambda \hbar^2 k}{2i} e^{-i\phi} \beta = 0 \implies \beta = \pm \alpha i e^{i\phi}.$$

The two eigenvectors are thus

$$\begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = \alpha \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ \pm i e^{i\phi} \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{or, when normalized,} \quad \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ \pm i e^{i\phi} \end{bmatrix}.$$

The corresponding eigenfunctions for the eigenvalues  $E_{\pm}$  are thus

$$|\psi_+\rangle = |\mathbf{k}\rangle \frac{|\uparrow\rangle + i e^{i\phi} |\downarrow\rangle}{\sqrt{2}} \quad \text{and} \quad |\psi_-\rangle = |\mathbf{k}\rangle \frac{|\uparrow\rangle - i e^{i\phi} |\downarrow\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

Next, we will analyze the just-derived wavefunctions.

### Theoretical Interlude: Orientation of Spin in Space

- If the projection  $\mathbf{S} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}}$  of a particle's spin  $\mathbf{S}$  in the direction  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}$  acts on the spin particle's wavefunction  $|\psi_s\rangle$  to produce  $\mathbf{S} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}} |\psi_s\rangle = \frac{\hbar}{2} |\psi_s\rangle$ , then we say the particle's spin points in the direction  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}$ .
- If we write  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}$  in spherical coordinates as

$$\hat{\mathbf{e}} = (\cos \varphi \sin \theta, \sin \varphi \sin \theta, \cos \theta),$$

then the equation  $\mathbf{S} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}} |\psi_s\rangle = \frac{\hbar}{2} |\psi_s\rangle$  has the solution

$$|\psi_s\rangle = \cos \frac{\theta}{2} |\uparrow\rangle + \sin \frac{\theta}{2} e^{i\varphi} |\downarrow\rangle.$$

In other words, if we know a particle's spin wavefunction  $|\psi_s\rangle$  and can deduce the values of  $\varphi$  and  $\theta$  by comparing the particle's wavefunction to the above equation, we can determine the spatial orientation  $\hat{\mathbf{e}} = (\cos \varphi \sin \theta, \sin \varphi \sin \theta, \cos \theta)$  of the particle's spin.

### Back to Our Problem

- In our case, the particle has the spin wavefunctions

$$|\psi_{s\pm}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |\uparrow\rangle \pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} i e^{i\phi} |\downarrow\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |\uparrow\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} e^{i(\phi \pm \frac{\pi}{2})} |\downarrow\rangle.$$

By comparing  $|\psi_{s\pm}\rangle$  to the above general expression for a spin wave function, i.e.

$$|\psi_s\rangle = \cos \frac{\theta}{2} |\uparrow\rangle + \sin \frac{\theta}{2} e^{i\varphi} |\downarrow\rangle,$$

we see that our particle has polar angle  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$  (since  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} \implies \cos \frac{\theta}{2} = \cos \frac{\pi}{4} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$  reproduces the  $|\uparrow\rangle$  coefficient  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ ) and azimuthal angle  $\varphi = \phi \pm \frac{\pi}{2}$ , where  $\phi$  is the angle in the phase term  $e^{i\phi}$  ( $\phi$  was the azimuthal angle in the polar-coordinate representation of the wave vector  $\mathbf{k} = (k, \phi)$ ).

In both cases, the particle's spin is perpendicular to wave vector  $\mathbf{k}$ .

## 10 Tenth Exercise Set

### 10.1 Rashba Coupling with Pauli Spin Matrices

Use the Pauli spin matrices to find the energy eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of a particle in the two-dimensional  $x, y$  plane with magnitude of spin  $s = 1/2$  and Hamiltonian

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \lambda(p_x S_y - p_y S_x),$$

where  $\mathbf{p} = (p_x, p_y)$  and  $\mathbf{S} = (S_x, S_y, S_z)$  are the momentum and spin operators and  $\lambda$  is a constant.

#### Quick Review of Previous Solution

- In the ninth exercise set, we solved this same problem without using spin matrices. For a particle with spin  $s = 1/2$ , the spin wavefunctions occur in a 2D spin Hilbert space and take the general form

$$|\psi_s\rangle = \alpha |\uparrow\rangle + \beta |\downarrow\rangle.$$

We then showed the commutation relation  $[H, \mathbf{p}] = 0$  which allowed us to make the wavefunction factorization

$$|\psi\rangle = |\mathbf{k}\rangle |\psi_s\rangle.$$

We substituted this factorization in the Schrödinger equation  $H|\psi\rangle = E|\psi\rangle$  and ended up with the  $(2 \times 2)$  eigenvalue problem

$$\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} & \frac{\lambda \hbar^2}{2i} (k_x - ik_y) \\ -\frac{\lambda \hbar^2}{2i} (k_x + ik_y) & \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = E \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix},$$

which we solved for the Hamiltonian's energy eigenvalues and eigenfunctions.

#### Theory: The Pauli Spin Matrices

- Today we will use the Pauli matrix representation of the spin operator, which is

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{\hbar}{2} \boldsymbol{\sigma},$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\sigma} = (\sigma_x, \sigma_y, \sigma_z)$ ;  $\sigma_x$ ,  $\sigma_y$ , and  $\sigma_z$  are called the *Pauli spin matrices*. In the standard  $|\uparrow\rangle$   $|\downarrow\rangle$  basis for particles with spin  $s = 1/2$ , the spin matrices are

$$\sigma_x = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \sigma_y = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \sigma_z = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Recall our problem's spin wavefunctions took the general form  $|\psi_s\rangle = \alpha|\uparrow\rangle + \beta|\downarrow\rangle$ . When working with Pauli matrices, we represent the wavefunction with the vector  $[\alpha, \beta]^T$ , which we call a *spinor*.

### Solution Using Spin Matrices

- In terms of the spin matrices, our problem's Rashba-coupled Hamiltonian reads

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \lambda \frac{\hbar}{2} (p_x \sigma_x - p_y \sigma_y),$$

and the wavefunction  $|\psi\rangle = |\mathbf{k}\rangle |\psi_s\rangle$  is, in the coordinate representation,

$$\psi = e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix}.$$

The stationary Schrödinger equation  $H\psi = E\psi$  reads

$$H\psi = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} + \frac{\lambda\hbar}{2} (\hbar k_x \sigma_y - \hbar k_y \sigma_x) e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} \equiv E\psi = E e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix}.$$

If we cancel  $e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}$  from both sides of the equation, we end up with

$$\frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} + \frac{\lambda\hbar^2}{2} [k_x \sigma_y - k_y \sigma_x] \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = E \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix}.$$

- If we insert the definitions of the Pauli matrices  $\sigma_y$  and  $\sigma_x$  and multiply out the matrices  $\sigma_y$  and  $\sigma_x$  with the spinor  $[\alpha, \beta]^T$ , we end up with the matrix equation

$$\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} & \frac{\lambda\hbar^2}{2i} (k_x - ik_y) \\ -\frac{\lambda\hbar^2}{2i} (k_x + ik_y) & \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = E \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix}.$$

This is exactly the same  $2 \times 2$  eigenvalue problem as in the previous exercise set. The procedure from here forward is same as in the previous problem—we would solve the eigenvalue problem for the Hamiltonian's energy eigenvalues and eigenfunctions as before.

The lesson is that when working with particles with  $s = 1/2$ , we are able to use the Pauli spin matrix representation of the spin operator to derive the same eigenvalue problem as in the previous Hilbert space approach.

## 10.2 Theory: Time Reversal Symmetry

- A problem is symmetric under time reversal if the problem's Hamiltonian  $H$  obeys  $[H, \mathcal{T}] = 0$  where  $\mathcal{T}$  is time reversal operator. The time reversal operator is anti-unitary, i.e.

$$\langle \mathcal{T}\psi_1 | \mathcal{T}\psi_2 \rangle = \langle \psi_1 | \psi_2 \rangle^*,$$

where  $*$  denotes complex conjugation.

- From linear algebra, recall that unitary operators preserve the inner product, i.e.

$$\langle U\psi_1 | U\psi_2 \rangle = \langle \psi_1 | \psi_2 \rangle.$$

If we move  $U$  from the ket to the bra term, the equality reads

$$\langle U^\dagger U \psi_1 | \psi_2 \rangle = \langle \psi_1 | \psi_2 \rangle,$$

which implies a unitary operator must satisfy  $U^\dagger U = I$ .

- Next, we introduce the complex conjugation operator  $K : \psi \mapsto \psi^*$ . We will now show that if  $\mathcal{T}$  is written as the product of a unitary operator  $U$  and the conjugation operator  $K$ , then  $\mathcal{T}$  is anti-unitary:

$$\begin{aligned}\langle \mathcal{T}\psi_1 | \mathcal{T}\psi_2 \rangle &= \langle UK\psi_1 | UK\psi_2 \rangle = \langle UU^\dagger K\psi_1 | K\psi_2 \rangle \\ &= \langle K\psi_1 | K\psi_2 \rangle = \int (K\psi_1)^*(K\psi_2) dV = \int (\psi_1^*)^* \psi_2^* dV \\ &= \int \psi_2^* \psi_1 dV = \langle \psi_2 | \psi_1 \rangle = \langle \psi_1 | \psi_2 \rangle^*,\end{aligned}$$

which results in the anti-unitary identity

$$\langle \mathcal{T}\psi_1 | \mathcal{T}\psi_2 \rangle = \langle \psi_1 | \psi_2 \rangle^*.$$

- Finally a theorem: for spin 1/2 particles, the time-reversal operator takes the form

$$\mathcal{T} = i\sigma_y K.$$

In this case (comparing to the general form  $\mathcal{T} = UK$ ) we have  $U = i\sigma_y$ . We can show that  $\mathcal{T}$  is anti-unitary by proving that  $U = i\sigma_y$  is unitary. The proof reads:

$$U^\dagger U = [\sigma_y^\dagger i\sigma_y] = \sigma_y(-i)i\sigma_y = \sigma_y^2 = I.$$

Since  $U = i\sigma_y$  is indeed unitary,  $\mathcal{T} = UK$  is anti-unitary.

### 10.3 Time-Reversal Symmetry and Rashba Coupling

Analyze the Rashba-coupled Hamiltonian from the previous two problems, i.e.

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{\lambda\hbar}{2}(p_x\sigma_y - p_y\sigma_x),$$

using the formalism of time-reversal symmetry for a particle with spin  $s = 1/2$ .

- First, we will show the problem's Hamiltonian is invariant under time reversal, i.e.  $[H, \mathcal{T}] = 0$ . We can rewrite the commutation condition in the form  $H\mathcal{T} = \mathcal{T}H$  and multiply by  $\mathcal{T}^{-1}$  from the left to get

$$H = \mathcal{T}H\mathcal{T}^{-1}.$$

We will show  $H$  and  $\mathcal{T}$  commute by proving  $H = \mathcal{T}H\mathcal{T}^{-1}$ .

- Recall from the theory section that for particles with spin  $s = 1/2$ , the time reversal operator is  $\mathcal{T} = i\sigma_y K$ , where  $\sigma_y$  is the second Pauli spin matrix and  $K$  is the complex conjugation operator. Substituting  $\mathcal{T} = i\sigma_y K$  into the commutation condition gives

$$\mathcal{T}H\mathcal{T}^{-1} = (i\sigma_y K)H(K^{-1}\sigma_y^{-1}i^{-1}).$$

We simplify this expression by noting that  $K^2 = I \implies K^{-1} = K$ ;  $\sigma_y = \sigma_y^{-1}$ ; and  $i^{-1} = -i$ , which results in

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{T}H\mathcal{T}^{-1} &= (i\sigma_y K)H(K\sigma_y(-i)) = i\sigma_y H^* K(K\sigma_y(-i)) \\ &= i\sigma_y H^\dagger K K\sigma_y(-i) = i\sigma_y H^* \sigma_y(-i) \\ &= \sigma_y H^* \sigma_y.\end{aligned}$$

Substituting in the Rashba-coupled Hamiltonian  $H$  gives

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{T}H\mathcal{T}^{-1} &= \sigma_y \left[ \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{\lambda\hbar}{2}(p_x\sigma_y - p_y\sigma_x) \right]^* \sigma_y \\ &= \sigma_y \left[ \frac{p^2}{2m} + \lambda\frac{\hbar}{2}((-p_x)(-\sigma_y) - (-p_y)(\sigma_x)) \right] \sigma_y.\end{aligned}$$

where we have used  $(p^2)^* = p^2$ ;  $p_{x,y}^* = -p_{x,y}$ ;  $\sigma_y^* = -\sigma_y$  and  $\sigma_x^* = \sigma_x$ . Multiplying out the above expression and applying  $\sigma_y^2 = I$  and  $\sigma_x\sigma_y = -\sigma_y\sigma_x$  gives

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{T}H\mathcal{T}^{-1} &= \frac{p^2}{2m}\sigma_y^2 + \frac{\lambda\hbar}{2}(p_x\sigma_y^3 + p_y\sigma_y\sigma_x\sigma_y) = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{\lambda\hbar}{2}(p_x\sigma_y + p_y(-\sigma_x\sigma_y)\sigma_y) \\ &= \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{\lambda\hbar}{2}(p_x\sigma_y - p_y\sigma_x) = H.\end{aligned}$$

Because  $\mathcal{T}H\mathcal{T}^{-1} = H$ ,  $H$  is invariant under time reversal.

- We will now make use of our Hamiltonian  $H$ 's time invariance. We start with the stationary Schrödinger equation  $H|\psi\rangle = E|\psi\rangle$ , apply  $\mathcal{T}$  to  $|\psi\rangle$  on both sides to get  $H\mathcal{T}|\psi\rangle = E\mathcal{T}|\psi\rangle$ , and use the commutativity of  $H$  and  $\mathcal{T}$  to get

$$H\mathcal{T}|\psi\rangle = \mathcal{T}H|\psi\rangle = \mathcal{T}E|\psi\rangle = E\mathcal{T}|\psi\rangle.$$

In other words, both  $|\psi\rangle$  and  $\mathcal{T}|\psi\rangle$  are eigenfunctions of  $H$ .

- Next, we consider the projection of  $|\psi\rangle$  onto  $|\mathcal{T}\psi\rangle$ , i.e.  $\langle\psi|\mathcal{T}\psi\rangle$ . Since  $\mathcal{T}$  is anti-unitarity, we have

$$\langle\psi|\mathcal{T}\psi\rangle = \langle\mathcal{T}\psi|\mathcal{T}(\mathcal{T}\psi)\rangle^* = \langle\mathcal{T}\psi|\mathcal{T}^2\psi\rangle^*.$$

We find  $\mathcal{T}^2$  using the spin 1/2 identity  $\mathcal{T} = i\sigma_y K$ :

$$\mathcal{T}^2 = i\sigma_y K i\sigma_y K = i\sigma_y(-i)(-\sigma_y)K^2 = -\sigma_y I = -I.$$

Substituting  $\mathcal{T}^2 = -I$  into the inner product  $\langle\psi|\mathcal{T}\psi\rangle$  gives

$$\langle\psi|\mathcal{T}\psi\rangle = \langle\mathcal{T}\psi|\mathcal{T}^2\psi\rangle^* = \langle\mathcal{T}\psi|-\psi\rangle^* = -\langle\mathcal{T}\psi|\psi\rangle^* = -\langle\psi|\mathcal{T}\psi\rangle,$$

which implies  $\langle\psi|\mathcal{T}\psi\rangle = 0$ . In other words, the projection  $|\psi\rangle$  onto  $|\mathcal{T}\psi\rangle$  is zero, meaning  $|\psi\rangle$  and  $|\mathcal{T}\psi\rangle$  are orthogonal and thus linearly independent.

- To summarize: For a spin 1/2 particle (which has  $\mathcal{T}^2 = -I$ ) whose Hamiltonian is invariant under time reversal, if  $|\psi\rangle$  is a solution of the stationary Schrödinger equation

$$H|\psi\rangle = E|\psi\rangle,$$

then the wavefunction  $\mathcal{T}|\psi\rangle$  also solves the stationary Schrödinger equation with the same energy eigenvalue, and  $|\psi\rangle$  is orthogonal to  $\mathcal{T}|\psi\rangle$ .

This means every eigenstate of a  $\mathcal{T}$ -invariant spin 1/2 Hamiltonian has degeneracy of at least two, since we have two linearly independent solutions  $|\psi\rangle$  and  $\mathcal{T}|\psi\rangle$  for each energy eigenvalue. This result is called *Kramers degeneracy*, and  $(|\psi\rangle, \mathcal{T}|\psi\rangle)$  are called a *Kramers pair*.



- Next, referring to the solutions from the previous two problem, we will identify the Kramer's pairs in the energy eigenstates of the Rashba-coupled Hamiltonian. Recall that for a given  $\mathbf{k}$ , the Hamiltonian has energy eigenvalues

$$E_{\pm} = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} \pm \frac{\lambda \hbar^2 k}{2},$$

with corresponding eigenfunctions

$$|\psi_{\pm}\rangle = \frac{|\mathbf{k}\rangle}{\sqrt{2}} \left( |\uparrow\rangle \pm ie^{i\phi} |\downarrow\rangle \right),$$

where we wrote the wave vector  $\mathbf{k}$  in polar coordinates as  $\mathbf{k} = (k, \phi)$ .

- We consider the solution  $\psi_+$ . Theory predicts that the Kramer's pair  $\mathcal{T}|\psi_+\rangle$  is also an energy eigenstate with the same eigenvalue and is orthogonal to  $|\psi_+\rangle$ —we'll see if this is the case. Writing  $|\mathbf{k}\rangle$  in the coordinate wavefunction representation and working in terms of spinors, the Kramer's pair  $\mathcal{T}|\psi_+\rangle$  is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{T}|\psi_+\rangle &= \mathcal{T} \left[ \frac{|\mathbf{k}\rangle}{\sqrt{2}} \left( |\uparrow\rangle + ie^{i\phi} |\downarrow\rangle \right) \right] = (i\sigma_y K) e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = i \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{bmatrix} e^{-i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha^* \\ \beta^* \end{bmatrix} \\ &= e^{-i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha^* \\ \beta^* \end{bmatrix} = e^{-i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} \begin{bmatrix} \beta^* \\ -\alpha^* \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

Returning to Dirac notation and noting that  $\alpha = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$  and  $\beta = \frac{ie^{i\phi}}{\sqrt{2}}$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{T}|\psi_+\rangle &= |-\mathbf{k}\rangle (\beta^* |\uparrow\rangle - \alpha^* |\downarrow\rangle) = |-\mathbf{k}\rangle \left[ \frac{-ie^{-i\phi}}{\sqrt{2}} |\uparrow\rangle - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |\downarrow\rangle \right] \\ &= -ie^{-i\phi} |-\mathbf{k}\rangle \frac{|\uparrow\rangle - ie^{i\phi} |\downarrow\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}. \end{aligned}$$

The phase factor  $-ie^{-i\phi}$  has magnitude one; since a wavefunction is determined only up to a constant phase factor of magnitude one, the above is equivalent to

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{T}|\psi_+\rangle &= |-\mathbf{k}\rangle \frac{|\uparrow\rangle - ie^{i\phi} |\downarrow\rangle}{\sqrt{2}} \\ &= |-\mathbf{k}\rangle \frac{|\uparrow\rangle + ie^{i(\phi+\pi)} |\downarrow\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}, \end{aligned}$$

where the second line uses the identity  $-i = ie^{i\pi}$ . Recall the original eigenstate  $|\psi_+\rangle$  has a phase angle  $\phi$ , corresponding to the direction of  $\mathbf{k}$  and spin up. It's Kramer pair  $\mathcal{T}|\psi_+\rangle$  has phase angle  $\phi + \pi$ , corresponding to the direction  $-\mathbf{k}$  and spin down.

## 10.4 Scattering on a Spin-Dependent Delta Function

Consider a spin-dependent scattering problem with two particles: particle 1 with spin  $s_1 = 1/2$  in the state  $|\uparrow\rangle$  and particle 2 with spin  $s_2 = 1$  in the state  $|10\rangle$ . The particles have the Hamiltonian

$$H = \frac{p_1^2}{2m} - \frac{\lambda}{\hbar^2} \mathbf{S}_1 \cdot \mathbf{S}_2 \delta(x).$$

Particle 2 is fixed at the origin at  $x = 0$  and particle 1 approaches and scatters off particle 2 from the region  $x \rightarrow -\infty$ . Determine the particle's spins after the collision.

- First, we'll establish the problem's Hilbert space and choose an appropriate basis. The total Hilbert space is  $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}_p \otimes \mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \mathcal{H}_2$ .  $\mathcal{H}_p$  is the momentum space of the first particle and  $\mathcal{H}_{1,2}$  are the spin spaces of the first and second particles, respectively. Note that the second particle's Hilbert space doesn't have a momentum component because particle 2 is fixed at the origin and doesn't move.

The first particle has spin  $s = 1/2$ , so its spin Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}_1$  is two-dimensional, and we will use the standard basis  $|\uparrow\rangle$  and  $|\downarrow\rangle$ . The second particle has spin  $s = 1$  and thus a three-dimensional space; we'll use the basis functions  $|11\rangle$ ,  $|10\rangle$  and  $|1-1\rangle$ .

- Next, we determine a basis for the combined spin space  $\mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \mathcal{H}_2$ . There are two standard options:
  1. A product basis, which uses commutativity of  $S_1^2$ ,  $S_{1z}$ ,  $S_2^2$ , and  $S_{2z}$ , which implies the existence of eigenfunctions that are simultaneously eigenfunctions of all four operators. The product basis consists of the states

$$\{ |\uparrow\rangle |11\rangle, |\uparrow\rangle |10\rangle, |\uparrow\rangle |1-1\rangle, |\downarrow\rangle |11\rangle, |\downarrow\rangle |10\rangle, |\downarrow\rangle |1-1\rangle \}.$$

This set is just all possible combinations of the products of the basis functions of the individual spin spaces  $\mathcal{H}_1$  and  $\mathcal{H}_2$ .

2. The other possible basis is the total angular momentum basis, which works in terms of the total spin operator  $\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}_1 + \mathbf{S}_2$ . This basis uses commutativity of  $S^2$ ,  $S_z$ ,  $S_1^2$ , and  $S_2^2$ .

In general, the total spin operator obeys  $|s_1 - s_2| \leq s \leq s_1 + s_2$ . In our case with  $s_1 = 1/2$  and  $s_2 = 1$ , the above relationship implies  $s \in \{\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}\}$ .

In our case the total angular momentum basis would be

$$\{ |\frac{3}{2}, \frac{3}{2}\rangle, |\frac{3}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\rangle, |\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\rangle, |\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{3}{2}\rangle, |\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\rangle, |\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\rangle \}.$$

By convention, because  $s_1 = 1/2$  and  $s_2 = 1$  remain fixed throughout the problem, we drop the last two terms  $1/2$  and  $1$  from each basis state and write the basis functions as

$$\{ |\frac{3}{2}, \frac{3}{2}\rangle, |\frac{3}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\rangle, |\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\rangle, |\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{3}{2}\rangle, |\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\rangle, |\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\rangle \}.$$

*We ran out of time at this point and continue the problem in the next exercise set.*

## 11 Eleventh Exercise Set

### 11.1 Scattering on a Spin-Dependent Delta Function (continued)

Consider a spin-dependent scattering problem with two particles: particle 1 with spin  $s_1 = 1/2$  in the state  $|\uparrow\rangle \equiv |\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\rangle$  and particle 2 with spin  $s_2 = 1$  in the state  $|10\rangle$ . The particles have the Hamiltonian

$$H = \frac{p_1^2}{2m} - \frac{\lambda}{\hbar^2} \mathbf{S}_1 \cdot \mathbf{S}_2 \delta(x).$$

Particle 2 is fixed at the origin at  $x = 0$  and particle 1 approaches and hits particle 2 from the region  $x \rightarrow -\infty$ . Determine the particle's spins after the collision.

- Review from the last exercise set: we had just begun the problem, and established the two possible bases to describe the problem—the product basis and the total angular momentum basis.

- Next we'll review the problem of scattering in a spinless delta potential (from the second exercise set) where the Hamiltonian is

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \lambda\delta(x).$$

We describe free scattering states with energy  $E > 0$  with the scattering matrix

$$\mathbf{S} = \begin{bmatrix} r & t' \\ t & r' \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{k + i\kappa} \begin{bmatrix} -i\kappa & k \\ k & -i\kappa \end{bmatrix},$$

where

$$k = \sqrt{\frac{2mE}{\hbar^2}} \quad \text{and} \quad \kappa = \frac{m\lambda}{\hbar^2}.$$

If we send a particle in towards the delta potential from the left, with incidence vector  $\mathbf{A} = (1, 0)$ , the particle is partly reflected and partly transmitted, according to

$$\psi(x < 0) = e^{ikx} + re^{-ikx} \quad \text{and} \quad \psi(x > 0) = te^{ikx}.$$

Recall that the scattering matrix  $\mathbf{S}$  is unitary and thus obeys  $\mathbf{S}^\dagger \mathbf{S} = \mathbf{I}$ . Finally, recall the coefficient parameters obey  $|t|^2 + |r|^2 = T + R = 1$ , where  $T$  and  $R$  are the probability of transmission and reflection, respectively.

- From the last exercise set, recall the system's Hilbert space is

$$\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}_p \otimes \mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \mathcal{H}_2,$$

where  $\mathcal{H}_p$  is the first particle's momentum space, and  $\mathcal{H}_1$  and  $\mathcal{H}_2$  are the first and second particle's two and three dimensional spin Hilbert spaces, respectively. The combined spin Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}_s = \mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \mathcal{H}_2$  is six-dimensional.

We identified two possible bases for use with our problem: The first is a product basis using the commutativity of  $S_1^2$ ,  $S_{z1}$ ,  $S_2^2$  and  $S_{z2}$ .

Nominally, the states in this basis are written  $|s_1 m_1 s_2 m_2\rangle$ , but because the particle spins  $s_1$  and  $s_2$  are fixed at  $1/2$  and  $1$ , respectively, we adopt a shorthand convention and write the states simply as  $|m_1 m_2\rangle$ , with  $s_1 = 1/2$  and  $s_2 = 1$  implicit.

- The second basis, called the total angular momentum basis, uses the commutativity of  $S_2$ ,  $S_z$ ,  $S_1^2$  and  $S_2^2$ . Recall total spin is the vector sum  $\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}_1 + \mathbf{S}_2$ . We write the states in this basis as

$$|ss_1 s_2 m\rangle \quad \text{or, in shorthand,} \quad |sm\rangle.$$

Again, by convention, we leave out the  $s_1$  and  $s_2$  for conciseness because in this problem their values are fixed at  $s_1 = 1/2$  and  $s_2 = 1$ , respectively.

We transform between the bases using the *Clebsch-Gordan coefficients*.

## End of Review, Start of New Material

- Recall the Hamiltonian for our spin-dependent scattering problem is

$$H = \frac{p_1^2}{2m} - \frac{\lambda}{\hbar^2} \mathbf{S}_1 \cdot \mathbf{S}_2 \delta(x_1).$$

First, we'll rewrite the dot product in terms of total spin  $\mathbf{S}$ :

$$\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}_1 + \mathbf{S}_2 \implies S^2 = S_1^2 + 2\mathbf{S}_1 \cdot \mathbf{S}_2 + S_2^2,$$

which implies

$$\mathbf{S}_1 \cdot \mathbf{S}_2 = \frac{S^2 - S_1^2 - S_2^2}{2}.$$

Substituting this expression for  $\mathbf{S}_1 \cdot \mathbf{S}_2$  into the Hamiltonian gives

$$H = \frac{p_1^2}{2m} - \frac{\lambda}{2\hbar^2}(S^2 - S_1^2 - S_2^2)\delta(x).$$

- Next note that the Hamiltonian  $H$  commutes with the spin operators:

$$[H, S^2] = [H, S_1^2] = [H, S_2^2] = [H, S_z] = 0.$$

Because  $H$  commutes with all of the spin basis operators, we can find eigenfunctions that are eigenfunctions of both  $H$  and all of the spin operators simultaneously.

- Next, we solve the stationary Schrödinger equation:

$$H|\psi\rangle = E|\psi\rangle.$$

Because  $H$  and the spin operators commute, we can factor the system's wavefunction into a momentum and spin portion of the form  $|\psi\rangle = |\psi_1\rangle \otimes |sm\rangle$ , which gives

$$\begin{aligned} H|\psi_1\rangle \otimes |sm_s\rangle &= \left(\frac{p_1^2}{2m}|\psi_1\rangle\right) \otimes |sm_s\rangle - \frac{\lambda}{2\hbar^2}\delta(x_1)|\psi_1\rangle \otimes (S^2 - S_1^2 - S_2^2)|sm_s\rangle \\ &= E|\psi_1\rangle \otimes |sm_s\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

We stress that the factorization  $|\psi\rangle = |\psi_1\rangle \otimes |sm_s\rangle$  is possible only because  $H$  commutes with each spin operator.

- The spin operators  $S$ ,  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  then act on their corresponding eigenstates to give

$$\begin{aligned} H|\psi_1\rangle \otimes |sm_s\rangle &= \left(\frac{p_1^2}{2m}|\psi_1\rangle\right) \otimes |sm_s\rangle - \frac{\lambda}{2\hbar^2}\delta(x_1)|\psi_1\rangle \otimes \left[\hbar^2 s(s+1) \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \hbar^2 s_1(s_1+1) - \hbar^2 s_2(s_2+1)\right] |sm_s\rangle \\ &= E|\psi_1\rangle \otimes |sm_s\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

Conveniently,  $|sm_s\rangle$  cancels from both sides of the equation. Substituting in  $s_1 = 1/2$  and  $s_2 = 1$  produces the purely momentum problem

$$\left(\frac{p_1^2}{2m} - \frac{\lambda\delta(x)}{2}\left[s(s+1) - \frac{3}{4} - 2\right]\right)|\psi_1\rangle = E|\psi_1\rangle,$$

where  $|\psi_1\rangle$  is the first particle's momentum wavefunction. Note that this equation depends only on the size  $s$  of the total spin, not on the  $z$  components  $m_s$ . For our problem with  $s_1 = 1/2$  and  $s_2 = 1$ , the identity  $|s_1 - s_2| \leq s \leq s_1 + s_2$  means there are only two possible values for  $s$ ; these are  $s = 1/2$  and  $s = 3/2$ .

- For  $s = 3/2$  we have

$$\left[ \frac{p_1^2}{2m} - \frac{\lambda \delta(x)}{2} \right] |\psi_1\rangle = E |\psi_1\rangle.$$

For  $s = 1/2$  we have

$$\left[ \frac{p_1^2}{2m} + \lambda \delta(x) \right] |\psi_1\rangle = E |\psi_1\rangle.$$

To review: using the commutation of  $H$  and the spin operators, we have transformed our problem to a problem in only the momentum Hilbert space. All spin dependence is gone; the eigenvalues depend only on the delta function parameter  $\lambda$ .

### Bound States

- A delta function potential has a bound state only for a downward-pointing delta function, which occurs if the delta function's coefficient is negative. Looking at the above equations for  $s = 1/2$  and  $s = 3/2$ , we see we have a bound state only for  $s = 3/2$ , where the  $\delta(x)$  term has a negative coefficient. For  $s = 1/2$ , the  $\delta$  function has a positive coefficient, and there is no bound state.
- For conciseness, we define the constants

$$\lambda_{3/2} = \frac{\lambda}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_{1/2} = -\lambda.$$

The Hamiltonians for  $s = 3/2$  and  $s = 1/2$  then read

$$H_{3/2} = \frac{p_1^2}{2m} - \lambda_{3/2} \delta(x) \quad \text{and} \quad H_{1/2} = \frac{p_1^2}{2m} - \lambda_{1/2} \delta(x).$$

- Recall (e.g. from the second exercise set) that a bound state in a delta potential  $V(x) = -\lambda \delta(x)$  has the wavefunction

$$\psi_0(x) = \sqrt{\kappa} e^{-\kappa|x|}, \quad \text{where } \kappa = \frac{m\lambda}{\hbar^2},$$

and the corresponding energy eigenvalue  $E_0 = \frac{m\lambda^2}{2\hbar^2}$ .

- For the  $s = 3/2$  problem, which has a bound state, the quantity  $\kappa$  is

$$\kappa_{3/2} = \frac{m\lambda_{3/2}}{\hbar^2} = \frac{m\lambda}{2\hbar^2},$$

and the corresponding bound eigenfunctions are

$$|\psi_0^{m_s}\rangle = \sqrt{\kappa_{3/2}} e^{-\kappa_{3/2}|x|} \left| \frac{3}{2} m_s \right\rangle.$$

This energy eigenvalue  $E_0$  is four-times degenerate because four linearly independent eigenfunctions  $|\psi_0^{m_s}\rangle$  (one each for  $m_s \in \left[-\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}\right]$ ) all have the same energy eigenvalue  $E_0 = \frac{m\lambda_{3/2}^2}{2\hbar^2}$ .

- *Side Note:* Technically, we are guilty of a slight abuse of notation. Namely, we've used both coordinate and Dirac notation when writing the wavefunction

$$|\psi_0^{m_s}\rangle = \sqrt{\kappa_{3/2}} e^{-\kappa_{3/2}|x|} \left| \frac{3}{2} m_s \right\rangle.$$

To resolve this, for the rest of the problem we define

$$\psi(x) |sm_s\rangle \equiv \left[ \int \psi(x) |x\rangle dx \right] |sm_s\rangle.$$

## Free Scattering States

- Having discussed the single bound state for  $s = 3/2$ , we now consider the free scattering states. For our problem (reusing the results from the delta function scattering problem in the second exercise set), the scattering matrix is

$$\mathbf{S}_s = \begin{bmatrix} r_s & t_s \\ t_s & r_s \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{k + i\kappa_s} \begin{bmatrix} -i\kappa_s & k \\ k & -i\kappa_s \end{bmatrix},$$

where we have introduced a subscript  $s$  to make the dependence of  $r$ ,  $t$  and  $\kappa$  on the value of total spin  $s$  explicit. The possible values of  $\kappa_s$  for  $s \in \{1/2, 3/2\}$  are

$$\kappa_{3/2} \equiv \frac{m\lambda_{3/2}}{\hbar^2} = \frac{m\lambda}{2\hbar^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \kappa_{1/2} \equiv \frac{m\lambda_{1/2}}{\hbar^2} = -\frac{m\lambda}{\hbar^2}.$$

- For a particle incident on the origin from the left, the scattering wavefunction on  $x \in (-\infty, 0)$  (to the left of the delta potential) takes the general form:

$$|\psi_b^-\rangle = \left( e^{ikx} + r_s e^{-ikx} \right) |sm_s\rangle, .$$

The subscript  $_b$  indicates this is a basis function for scattering states on the region  $x < 0$ . Note that the ansatz contains the incident wave  $e^{ikx}$  and the reflected wave  $r e^{-ikx}$ . Meanwhile, the wavefunction on  $x \in (0, \infty)$  (to the right of the delta potential) is

$$|\psi_b^+\rangle = t_s e^{ikx} |sm_s\rangle, .$$

where  $t_s e^{ikx}$  is the transmitted wave. Note the explicit dependence of  $t$  and  $r$  on the particle's spin  $s$ . The above two wavefunctions, which are written in the total angular momentum basis  $|sm_s\rangle$ , form a complete basis of the Hilbert space of free scattering states. In the remainder of the problem, we will use these basis states to construct the initial and final scattering states in our specific problem.

- Just to review what the problem asks for: particle 1, in state  $|\uparrow\rangle$ , is incident from the left on particle 2, which is fixed at the origin and in state  $|0\rangle$ , and we are interested in the scattered spin states of the two particles.

The incident part of the wavefunction takes the form

$$|\psi_{\text{in}}\rangle = e^{ikx} |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle .$$

Note that this wavefunction is written in the product basis—it is the product of the first particle's spin state  $|\uparrow\rangle$  and the second particle's spin state  $|0\rangle$ . However, the above eigenfunctions  $|\psi_b^-\rangle$  and  $|\psi_b^+\rangle$  spanning the Hilbert space of free scattering are written in the total angular momentum basis.

At this point, we need a way to transform the initial state from the product basis to the total angular momentum basis—we make the transformation using the Clebsch-Gordan (CG) coefficients.

## Using the Clebsch-Gordan Coefficients

- First, using a table of CG coefficients, find the sub-table whose heading has the correct combination  $s_1 \times s_2$  of spin numbers for each particle. In our case, our particles have spins  $s_1 = 1/2$  and  $s_2 = 1$ , so we use the  $1 \times 1/2$  table, shown in Figure 1 (note that the order of  $s_1$  and  $s_2$  is not important in this step).

Diagram illustrating a 2D lattice structure with various numerical values and arrows indicating interactions or coefficients. The lattice is composed of several interconnected boxes. The values within the boxes are:

- Top left:  $1 \times 1/2$  (with  $s1$  and  $s2$  above it)
- Top middle:  $3/2$  and  $+3/2$
- Top right:  $3/2$  and  $1/2$  (with an arrow labeled  $s$  pointing to it)
- Middle left:  $+1$  and  $+1/2$
- Middle middle:  $1$  and  $+1/2$  (with an arrow labeled  $m_s$  pointing to it)
- Bottom left:  $+1$  and  $-1/2$
- Bottom middle:  $0$  and  $+1/2$  (with arrows labeled  $m1$  and  $m2$  pointing to it)
- Bottom right (highlighted):  $2/3$  and  $-1/3$  (labeled *coefficients*)
- Far right (top):  $3/2$  and  $1/2$
- Far right (middle):  $-1/2$  and  $-1/2$
- Far right (bottom):  $0$  and  $-1/2$
- Far right (bottom right):  $2/3$  and  $1/3$
- Far right (bottom right):  $3/2$  and  $-3/2$
- Bottom right:  $-1$  and  $-1/2$
- Bottom right:  $1$

Figure 1: The Clebsch-Gordan coefficients for two particles with spins  $s_1 = 1/2$  and  $s_2 = 1$ .

- We start with the initial incident spin state  $|\uparrow\rangle|0\rangle \equiv |1/2\rangle|0\rangle$ , which is written in the product basis  $|m_1 m_2\rangle$ . In the CG table, we find the row containing 0 and  $+1/2$ . The row immediately to the right contains the numbers  $2/3$  and  $-1/3$ —these are coefficients. Each coefficient has an implicit square root—for example  $-1/3$  means  $-\sqrt{1/3}$ —but the square roots are not written for conciseness.

For each coefficient, in our case  $2/3$  and  $-1/3$ , we find the column in the box immediately above. For the coefficient  $2/3$ , the column above is  $3/2, +1/2$ , and for the coefficient  $-1/3$ , the column above is  $1/2, +1/2$ . The columns represent states in the total angular momentum basis—the top row, in this case  $3/2$  and  $1/2$ , represents values of  $s$ , and the bottom row, in this case  $+1/2$  and  $+1/2$ , represents values of  $m_s$ . Put together, each column is a basis state  $|sm_s\rangle$ .

We assemble the transformation between the product and total angular momentum basis as follows:

$$|\uparrow\rangle|0\rangle \equiv |\frac{1}{2}\rangle|0\rangle \rightarrow \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}|\frac{3}{2}\frac{1}{2}\rangle - \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}}|\frac{1}{2}\frac{1}{2}\rangle.$$

The transformation of the initial state  $|\uparrow\rangle|0\rangle$  from the product to the total angular momentum basis is then written

$$|\psi_{\text{in}}\rangle = e^{ikx} |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle = e^{ikx} \left( \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} \left| \frac{3}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle - \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} \left| \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle \right).$$

- Recall the basis scattering states on the region  $x < 0$  are

$$|\psi_{\text{b}}^{-}\rangle = \left(e^{ikx} + r_s e^{-ikx}\right) |sm_s\rangle,$$

while the second set of basis states, for the region  $x > 0$ , are

$$|\psi_{\mathbf{b}}^+\rangle = t_s e^{ikx} |sm_s\rangle.$$

Both scattering state basis functions are written the basis  $|sm_s\rangle$ .

- Our next step is to construct our specific scattering problem's wavefunctions on the regions  $x < 0$  and  $x > 0$  using the using the above basis functions.

To do this, we first note that the incident state  $|\psi_{\text{in}}\rangle$  contains the state  $|\frac{3}{2}\frac{1}{2}\rangle$  with coefficient  $\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}$ , and the state  $|\frac{1}{2}\frac{1}{2}\rangle$  with coefficient  $-\sqrt{\frac{1}{3}}$ . We thus construct the wavefunction  $|\psi_{-}\rangle$ , which describes the particle on the region  $x < 0$ , from a linear combination of the basis state  $|\psi_{\text{b}}^{-}\rangle$  with  $|sm_s\rangle = |\frac{3}{2}\frac{1}{2}\rangle$  weighted by  $\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}$ , and the basis state  $|\psi_{\text{b}}^{-}\rangle$  with  $|sm_s\rangle = |\frac{1}{2}\frac{1}{2}\rangle$  weighted by  $-\sqrt{\frac{1}{3}}$ . The result is

$$|\psi_{-}\rangle = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} \left( e^{ikx} + r_{3/2} e^{-ikx} \right) \left| \frac{3}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle - \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} \left( e^{ikx} + r_{1/2} e^{-ikx} \right) \left| \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle.$$

Similarly, we construct  $|\psi_{+}\rangle$ , which describes our scattering problem on the region  $x > 0$ , via

$$|\psi_{+}\rangle = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} \left( t_{3/2} e^{ikx} \left| \frac{3}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle \right) - \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} \left( t_{1/2} e^{ikx} \left| \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle \right).$$

Recognizing the expression for  $|\psi_{\text{in}}\rangle$  within  $|\psi_{-}\rangle$  and factoring out the common exponential factors gives

$$\begin{aligned} |\psi_{-}\rangle &= |\psi_{\text{in}}\rangle + e^{-ikx} \left( \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} r_{3/2} \left| \frac{3}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle - \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} r_{1/2} \left| \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle \right) \\ |\psi_{+}\rangle &= e^{ikx} \left( \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} t_{3/2} \left| \frac{3}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle - \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} t_{1/2} \left| \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle \right). \end{aligned}$$

- Next, now that we have properly constructed the basis states  $|\psi_{-}\rangle$  and  $|\psi_{+}\rangle$ , we will transform them from the total angular momentum basis back into the product basis  $|m_1 m_2\rangle$ . Again, we make the transformation with the CG coefficients. The transformation of  $|\psi_{\text{in}}\rangle$  within  $|\psi_{-}\rangle$  is already known, i.e.

$$|\psi_{\text{in}}\rangle = e^{ikx} |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle.$$

Next, we transform the state  $|\frac{3}{2}\frac{1}{2}\rangle$  to the product basis. In the CG table, we find the column containing 3/2 and +1/2, which correspond to  $s$  and  $m_s$ . The column below, in this case 1/3 and 2/3, contains the coefficients needed for the transformation to the product basis. The row to the left of each coefficient (+1, -1/2 for the coefficient 1/3 and 0, +1/2 for the coefficient 2/3) represents the corresponding states in the product basis  $|m_1 m_2\rangle$ ; each coefficient applies to the  $|m_1 m_2\rangle$  state in the corresponding row. The transformation of  $|\frac{3}{2}\frac{1}{2}\rangle$  to the product basis reads

$$\left| \frac{3}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle \rightarrow \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} |\downarrow\rangle |1\rangle + \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle.$$

Analogously, the transformation of  $|\frac{1}{2}\frac{1}{2}\rangle$  to the product basis reads

$$\left| \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle \rightarrow \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} |\downarrow\rangle |1\rangle - \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle.$$

- Substituting in the product basis representations of  $|\psi_{\text{in}}\rangle$ ,  $|\frac{3}{2}\frac{1}{2}\rangle$ , and  $|\frac{1}{2}\frac{1}{2}\rangle$  into the state  $|\psi_{-}\rangle$  gives

$$\begin{aligned} |\psi_{-}\rangle &= e^{ikx} |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle + e^{-ikx} \left[ \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} r_{3/2} \left( \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} |\downarrow\rangle |1\rangle + \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle \right) \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} r_{1/2} \left( \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} |\downarrow\rangle |1\rangle - \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle \right) \right]. \end{aligned}$$



The state  $|\psi_-\rangle$  is now fully transformed back to the product basis.

- Following an analogous transformation procedure, the product basis representation of  $|\psi_+\rangle$  is

$$|\psi_+\rangle = e^{ikx} \left[ \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} t_{3/2} \left( \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} |\downarrow\rangle |1\rangle + \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle \right) - \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} t_{1/2} \left( \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} |\downarrow\rangle |1\rangle - \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle \right) \right].$$

- Next, we combine like terms in  $|\psi_-\rangle$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} |\psi_-\rangle &= e^{ikx} |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle + e^{-ikx} \left[ \left( \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} r_{3/2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} r_{1/2} \right) |\downarrow\rangle |1\rangle + \left( \frac{2}{3} r_{3/2} + \frac{1}{3} r_{1/2} \right) |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle \right] \\ &\equiv e^{ikx} |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle + e^{-ikx} (r_{\downarrow 1} |\downarrow\rangle |1\rangle + r_{\uparrow 0} |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle), \end{aligned}$$

where we have defined the probability amplitudes  $r_{\downarrow 1}$  and  $r_{\uparrow 0}$ , which represent, respectively, the probability of the first particle reflecting in the state  $|\downarrow\rangle$  and the second particle reflecting in the state  $|1\rangle$ ; and the probability of the first particle reflecting in the state  $|\uparrow\rangle$  and the second particle reflecting in the state  $|0\rangle$ .

Similarly, combining like terms in  $|\psi_+\rangle$  gives

$$\begin{aligned} |\psi_+\rangle &= e^{ikx} \left[ \left( \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} t_{3/2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} t_{1/2} \right) |\downarrow\rangle |1\rangle + \left( \frac{2}{3} t_{3/2} + \frac{1}{3} t_{1/2} \right) |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle \right] \\ &\equiv e^{ikx} (t_{\downarrow 1} |\downarrow\rangle |1\rangle + t_{\uparrow 0} |\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle). \end{aligned}$$

Here  $t_{\downarrow 1}$  and  $t_{\uparrow 0}$  represent, respectively, the probability of the first particle transmitting in the state  $|\downarrow\rangle$  and the second particle transmitting in the state  $|1\rangle$ ; and the probability of the first particle transmitting in the state  $|\uparrow\rangle$  and the second particle transmitting in the state  $|0\rangle$ .

- Evidently, there are four possible outcomes: the incident particle can either reflect or transmit; and the system's spin configuration can either flip (from  $|\uparrow\rangle |0\rangle$  to  $|\downarrow\rangle |1\rangle$ ) or remain the same. The probability for a given process comes from the squared amplitude of the corresponding  $r$  or  $t$  coefficient.

For example, the probability for reflection with a flipped spin configuration

$$R_{\downarrow 1} = |r_{\downarrow 1}|^2 = \left| \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} r_{3/2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} r_{1/2} \right|^2.$$

- Finally, we will show the problem obeys conservation of total probability, i.e.

$$P_{\text{tot}} \equiv R_{\downarrow 1} + R_{\uparrow 0} + T_{\downarrow 1} + T_{\uparrow 0} = 1.$$

We substitute in the values of the probability amplitudes to get

$$\begin{aligned}
P_{\text{tot}} &= \left| \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} r_{3/2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} r_{1/2} \right|^2 + \left| \frac{2}{3} r_{3/2} + \frac{1}{3} r_{1/2} \right|^2 + \left| \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} t_{3/2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} t_{1/2} \right|^2 + \left| \frac{2}{3} t_{3/2} + \frac{1}{3} t_{1/2} \right|^2 \\
&= \frac{2}{9} |r_{3/2}|^2 + \frac{2}{9} |r_{1/2}|^2 - \frac{2}{9} 2 \operatorname{Re} [r_{3/2}^* r_{1/2}] + \frac{4}{9} |r_{3/2}|^2 + \frac{1}{9} |r_{1/2}|^2 + \frac{2}{9} 2 \operatorname{Re} [r_{3/2}^* r_{1/2}] \\
&\quad + \frac{2}{9} |t_{3/2}|^2 + \frac{2}{9} |t_{1/2}|^2 - \frac{2}{9} 2 \operatorname{Re} [t_{3/2}^* t_{1/2}] + \frac{4}{9} |t_{3/2}|^2 + \frac{1}{9} |t_{1/2}|^2 + \frac{2}{9} 2 \operatorname{Re} [t_{3/2}^* t_{1/2}] \\
&= \frac{2}{3} (|r_{3/2}|^2 + |t_{3/2}|^2) + \frac{1}{3} (|r_{1/2}|^2 + |t_{1/2}|^2).
\end{aligned}$$

Next, note that the  $r$  and  $t$  terms are precisely the elements of the scattering matrices

$$\mathbf{S}_{1/2} = \begin{bmatrix} r_{1/2} & t_{1/2} \\ t_{1/2} & r_{1/2} \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{S}_{3/2} = \begin{bmatrix} r_{3/2} & t_{3/2} \\ t_{3/2} & r_{3/2} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Since every scattering matrix is unitary, i.e.  $\mathbf{S}^\dagger \mathbf{S} = \mathbf{I}$ , it follows that

$$(|r_{3/2}|^2 + |t_{3/2}|^2) = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad (|r_{1/2}|^2 + |t_{1/2}|^2) = 1.$$

Substituting these results into the expression for  $P_{\text{tot}}$  gives

$$P_{\text{tot}} = \frac{2}{3} (|r_{3/2}|^2 + |t_{3/2}|^2) + \frac{1}{3} (|r_{1/2}|^2 + |t_{1/2}|^2) = \frac{2}{3} \cdot 1 + \frac{1}{3} \cdot 1 = 1.$$

In other words, because  $P_{\text{tot}} = 1$ , our scattering problem obeys conservation of probability, as it must.

## 12 Twelfth Exercise Set

### 12.1 Theory: Non-Degenerate Perturbation Theory

- Consider a Hamiltonian  $H_0$  with known eigenfunctions  $|n_0\rangle$  and non-degenerate energy eigenvalues  $E_n^{(0)}$  satisfying the stationary Schrödinger equation

$$H_0 |n_0\rangle = E_n^{(0)} |n_0\rangle.$$

We then add a small perturbation term  $H'$  to the original Hamiltonian to get the perturbed Hamiltonian

$$H = H_0 + H'.$$

- In this case, to second order in perturbation theory, the energy eigenvalues of the perturbed Hamiltonian are

$$E_n = E_n^{(0)} + \langle n_0 | H' | n_0 \rangle + \sum_{m \neq n} \frac{|\langle m_0 | H' | n_0 \rangle|^2}{E_n^{(0)} - E_m^{(0)}},$$

while the corrected eigenfunction  $|n\rangle$  are

$$|n\rangle = |n_0\rangle + \sum_{m \neq n} \frac{|\langle m_0 | H' | n_0 \rangle|^2}{E_n^{(0)} - E_m^{(0)}} |m_0\rangle.$$

For both eigenvalues and eigenfunctions, we generally take only the first nonzero (non-trivial) term in the perturbation expansion (e.g. if the first-order correction is non-zero, we would stop there, without finding the second-order correction).

## 12.2 QHO with a Quartic Perturbation

Use perturbation theory to estimate the energy eigenvalues of the perturbed Hamiltonian

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}kx^2 + \lambda x^4, \quad \lambda > 0,$$

which contains the quartic perturbation term  $\lambda x^4$ .

- First, we identify the unperturbed Hamiltonian: the familiar harmonic oscillator

$$H_0 = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}kx^2,$$

with eigenstates  $|n_0\rangle$  and eigenvalues  $E_n^{(0)}$  obeying

$$H_0 |n_0\rangle = E_n^{(0)} |n_0\rangle, \quad E_n^{(0)} = \hbar\omega\left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right).$$

- The perturbation term is  $H' = \lambda x^4$ . To first order, the corrected energy of the perturbed Hamiltonian  $H$  is

$$E_n = E_n^{(0)} + \langle n_0 | \lambda x^4 | n_0 \rangle = E_n^{(0)} + \lambda \langle n_0 | x^4 | n_0 \rangle.$$

Next, we evaluate the expectation value matrix element  $\langle n_0 | x^4 | n_0 \rangle$ . We will work in terms of the annihilation and creation operators. Nominally,  $x^4$  takes the form

$$x^4 = \frac{x_0^4}{4}(a + a^\dagger)^4.$$

However, since  $a$  and  $a^\dagger$  don't commute,  $(a + a^\dagger)^4$  would have 16 terms if multiplied out. To avoid dealing with 16 terms, we make two  $x$  act on the  $\langle n|$  term and two on the  $|n\rangle$  term as follows:

$$\langle n_0 | x^4 | n_0 \rangle = \langle x^2 n_0 | x^2 | n_0 \rangle.$$

We can factor  $x^4$  and move it unchanged between  $\langle n_0 |$  and  $|n_0\rangle$  because  $x$  is Hermitian.

- In terms of  $a$  and  $a^\dagger$ , the operator  $x^2$  reads

$$x^2 = \frac{x_0^2}{2}(a + a^\dagger)^2 = \frac{x_0^2}{2}(a^2 + 2a^\dagger a + (a^\dagger)^2 + 1),$$

where we have used the commutator identity  $[a, a^\dagger] = 1$ . Using this expression for  $x^2$ , we now assemble the matrix element  $\langle x^2 n_0 | x^2 | n_0 \rangle$  in pieces. First, (temporarily dropping the subscript 0 for conciseness and referring to the unperturbed  $|n_0\rangle$  as  $|n\rangle$ ), we have

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 |n\rangle &= \frac{x_0^2}{2}(a^2 + 2a^\dagger a + (a^\dagger)^2 + 1) |n\rangle \\ &= \frac{x_0^2}{2} [\sqrt{n}\sqrt{n-1} |n-2\rangle + 2\sqrt{n}\sqrt{n} |n\rangle + \sqrt{n+1}\sqrt{n+2} |n+2\rangle + |n\rangle] \\ &= \frac{x_0^2}{2} [\sqrt{n(n-1)} |n-2\rangle + (2n+1) |n\rangle + \sqrt{(n+1)(n+2)} |n+2\rangle]. \end{aligned}$$

Since the coefficients in  $x^2|n\rangle$  are real, making complex conjugation redundant, we have  $\langle x^2n|x^2|n\rangle$ . Using orthonormality of the states  $|n\rangle$  produces

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x^2n|x^2|n\rangle &= \frac{x_0^4}{4}[n(n-1) + (2n+1)^2 + (n+1)(n+2)] \\ &= \frac{x_0^4}{4}[6n^2 + 6n + 3].\end{aligned}$$

- Using the just-calculated matrix element  $\langle x^2n_0|x^2|n_0\rangle = \langle n_0|x^4|n_0\rangle$ , the perturbed Hamiltonian's energy to first order in perturbation theory is

$$E_n = E_n^{(0)} + \lambda \frac{3x_0^4}{4}(2n^2 + 2n + 1).$$

We end our approximation here, since the first-order correction is nontrivial.

Written out in full, the corrected energy eigenvalues are

$$E_n = \hbar\omega\left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right) + \lambda \frac{3x_0^4}{4}(2n^2 + 2n + 1).$$

Note that, unlike  $E_n^{(0)}$ , the energies  $E_n$  are no longer equally spaced by  $\hbar\omega$ .

### 12.3 QHO with a Cubic Perturbation

*Use perturbation theory to estimate the energy eigenvalues of the perturbed Hamiltonian*

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}kx^2 + \lambda x^3, \quad \lambda > 0,$$

*which contains the cubic perturbation term  $\lambda x^3$ .*

- As in the previous problem, the unperturbed Hamiltonian  $H_0$  is the familiar quantum harmonic oscillator

$$H_0 = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}kx^2,$$

with the eigenvalue relation

$$H_0|n_0\rangle = E_n^{(0)}|n_0\rangle, \quad E_n^{(0)} = \hbar\omega\left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right).$$

- The perturbation term is  $H' = \lambda x^3$ . Finally, we define the perturbed potential

$$V(x) \equiv \frac{1}{2}kx^2 + \lambda x^3.$$

- To first order, the perturbed Hamiltonian's energy eigenvalues are

$$E_n = E_n^{(0)} + \langle n_0|\lambda x^3|n_0\rangle.$$

In the coordinate wavefunction representation the expectation value reads

$$\langle n_0|\lambda x^3|n_0\rangle = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi_n^* \lambda x^3 \psi_n dx = 0.$$

This expectation value turns out to be zero—a short explanation follows. Because  $V(x) = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$  is an even potential, the Hamiltonian  $H_0$ 's eigenfunctions are either symmetric or asymmetric (see e.g. [Subsection 1.3](#)).

If  $\psi_n(x)$  is even, the integrand  $\psi_n^* \lambda x^3 \psi_n$ , being the product of an even, odd, and even function, is odd. Similarly, if  $\psi_n(x)$  is odd, the integrand is a product of three odd functions, and is thus still odd. In both cases we take the integral of an odd function over  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ —result is zero.

- Because the first-order correction to the perturbed energies  $E_n$  gives a trivial result, we move on to the second order perturbation approximation

$$E_n = E_n^{(0)} + \sum_{m \neq n} \frac{|\langle m_0 | H' | n_0 \rangle|^2}{E_n^{(0)} - E_m^{(0)}}.$$

Temporarily dropping the subscript  $_0$  for conciseness and referring to the unperturbed eigenfunctions  $|n_0\rangle$  as  $|n\rangle$ , the expectation value can be simplified to

$$\langle m | H' | n \rangle = \langle m | \lambda x^3 | n \rangle = \lambda \langle x m | x^2 | n \rangle.$$

As in the previous problem, we assemble the expectation value piece by piece. Reusing the previous problem's result of  $x^2 |n\rangle$ , the ket term is

$$x^2 |n\rangle = \frac{x_0^2}{2} \left[ \sqrt{n(n-1)} |n-2\rangle + (2n+1) |n\rangle + \sqrt{(n+1)(n+2)} |n+2\rangle \right].$$

Meanwhile, we find the bra term with

$$\begin{aligned} x |m\rangle &= \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}} (a + a^\dagger) |m\rangle = \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}} [\sqrt{m} |m-1\rangle + \sqrt{m+1} |m+1\rangle] \implies \\ \langle x m | &= \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}} [\sqrt{m} \langle m-1| + \sqrt{m+1} \langle m+1|], \end{aligned}$$

where the real coefficients make complex conjugation redundant. Applying the orthonormality of the states  $|n\rangle$ , the bracket is thus

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x m | x^2 | n \rangle &= \frac{x_0^3}{\sqrt{8}} \left[ \sqrt{m} \sqrt{n(n-1)} \delta_{m-1, n-2} + \sqrt{m} (2n+1) \delta_{m-1, n} \right. \\ &\quad + \sqrt{m} \sqrt{(n+1)(n+2)} \delta_{m-1, n+2} + \sqrt{m+1} \sqrt{n(n-1)} \delta_{m+1, n-2} \\ &\quad \left. + \sqrt{m+1} (2n+1) \delta_{m+1, n} + \sqrt{m+1} \sqrt{(n+1)(n+2)} \delta_{m+1, n+2} \right]. \end{aligned}$$

Re-shifting indexes on the Kronecker deltas (just for clarity, e.g.  $\delta_{m-1, n-2} \equiv \delta_{m, n-1}$  or  $\delta_{m+1, n-2} \equiv \delta_{m, n-3}$ ) gives

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x m | x^2 | n \rangle &= \frac{x_0^3}{\sqrt{8}} \left[ \sqrt{m} \sqrt{n(n-1)} \delta_{m, n-1} + \sqrt{m} (2n+1) \delta_{m, n+1} \right. \\ &\quad + \sqrt{m} \sqrt{(n+1)(n+2)} \delta_{m, n+3} + \sqrt{m+1} \sqrt{n(n-1)} \delta_{m, n-3} \\ &\quad \left. + \sqrt{m+1} (2n+1) \delta_{m, n-1} + \sqrt{m+1} \sqrt{(n+1)(n+2)} \delta_{m, n+1} \right]. \end{aligned}$$

Writing  $m$  in terms of  $n$  with reference to the  $\delta_{mn}$  (e.g.  $m \rightarrow n-1$  for  $\delta_{m, n-1}$ ) gives

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x m | x^2 | n \rangle &= \frac{x_0^3}{\sqrt{8}} \left[ \sqrt{n} \sqrt{n-1} \delta_{m, n-1} + \sqrt{n+1} (2n+1) \delta_{m, n+1} \right. \\ &\quad + \sqrt{(n+1)(n+2)(n+3)} \delta_{m, n+3} + \sqrt{n(n-1)(n-2)} \delta_{m, n-3} \\ &\quad \left. + \sqrt{n} (2n+1) \delta_{m, n-1} + (n+2) \sqrt{n+1} \delta_{m, n+1} \right]. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, combining like terms and putting the  $\delta_{mn}$  in order produces

$$\begin{aligned} \langle xm|x^2|n\rangle = \frac{x_0^3}{\sqrt{8}} & \left[ \sqrt{n(n-1)(n-2)}\delta_{m,n-3} + 3n\sqrt{n}\delta_{m,n-1} \right. \\ & \left. + 3(n+1)\sqrt{n+1}\delta_{m,n+1} + \sqrt{(n+1)(n+2)(n+3)}\delta_{m,n+3} \right]. \end{aligned}$$

Switching back to subscript notation for the unperturbed eigenstates, with  $\langle xm|x^2|n\rangle \equiv \langle xm_0|x^2|n_0\rangle$  known, we just multiply by  $\lambda$  to find matrix element

$$\langle m_0|H'|n_0\rangle = \lambda \langle xm_0|x^2|n_0\rangle,$$

needed to find the perturbed energy  $E_n$ .

- Using the just-derived  $\langle m_0|H'|n_0\rangle$ , the perturbed Hamiltonian's energy  $E_n$  is thus

$$\begin{aligned} E_n = E_n^{(0)} + \sum_{m \neq n} \frac{|\langle m_0|H'|n_0\rangle|^2}{E_n^{(0)} - E_m^{(0)}} = E_n^{(0)} + \frac{\lambda^2 x_0^6}{8} & \left( \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{E_n^{(0)} - E_{n-3}^{(0)}} + \frac{9n^3}{E_n^{(0)} - E_{n-1}^{(0)}} \right. \\ & \left. + \frac{9(n+1)^3}{E_n^{(0)} - E_{n+1}^{(0)}} + \frac{(n+1)(n+2)(n+3)}{E_n^{(0)} - E_{n+3}^{(0)}} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Note that, nominally, we must sum over all  $m \neq n$  to find  $E_n$ . However, because of the Kronecker deltas in the matrix element  $\langle m_0|H'|n_0\rangle$ , there are only four  $m$  that are not equal to  $n$  at a given value of  $n$ .

Next, we substitute in the energy differences (e.g.  $E_n^{(0)} - E_{n-3}^{(0)} = 3\hbar\omega$ ) in the denominators, which are known from the unperturbed Hamiltonian  $H_0$ , where the energies are equally spaced by  $\hbar\omega$ . Substituting in energies and factoring out  $\hbar\omega$  gives

$$\begin{aligned} E_n &= E_n^{(0)} + \frac{\lambda^2 x_0^6}{24\hbar\omega} [n(n-1)(n-2) + 27n^3 - 27(n+1)^3 - (n+1)(n+2)(n+3)] \\ &= E_n^{(0)} + \frac{\lambda^2 x_0^6}{24\hbar\omega} (n^3 - 3n^2 + 2n + 27n^3 - 27n^3 - 81n^2 - 81n - 27 - n^3 - 6n^2 - 11n - 6) \\ &= E_n^{(0)} - \frac{\lambda^2 x_0^6}{24\hbar\omega} (90n^2 + 90n + 33) \\ &= E_n^{(0)} - \frac{\lambda^2 x_0^6}{8\hbar\omega} (30n^2 + 30n + 11). \end{aligned}$$

Note that the energy correction is negative—the perturbed energies  $E_n$  are lower than the standard QHO energies  $E_n^{(0)}$ .

- Next, we find the perturbed eigenfunctions  $|n\rangle$ . From the theory section, the  $|n\rangle$  are defined as

$$|n\rangle = |n_0\rangle + \sum_{m \neq n} \frac{|\langle m_0|H'|n_0\rangle|^2}{E_n^{(0)} - E_m^{(0)}} |m_0\rangle.$$

which in our case, using the matrix element  $\langle m_0|H'|n_0\rangle$ , is

$$\begin{aligned} |n\rangle = |n_0\rangle + \frac{\lambda x_0^3}{\sqrt{8}} & \left[ \frac{\sqrt{n(n-1)(n-2)}}{3\hbar\omega} |n_0-3\rangle + \frac{3n\sqrt{n}}{\hbar\omega} |n_0-1\rangle \right. \\ & \left. - \frac{3(n+1)\sqrt{n+1}}{\hbar\omega} |n_0+1\rangle - \frac{\sqrt{(n+1)(n+2)(n+3)}}{3\hbar\omega} |n_0+3\rangle \right]. \end{aligned}$$

The perturbed ground state wavefunction  $|0\rangle$  is

$$|\tilde{0}\rangle = |0\rangle_0 + \frac{\lambda x_0^3}{3\sqrt{8}\hbar\omega} \left[ -9|1\rangle_0 - \sqrt{6}|3\rangle_0 \right],$$

where  $|n\rangle_0$  denotes the unperturbed QHO eigenstates. Note that we drop the  $|n_0 - 3\rangle$  and  $|n_0 - 1\rangle$  terms, since  $|-3\rangle_0$  and  $|-1\rangle_0$  don't exist.

- Finally, we find  $\langle 0|x|0\rangle$ , the expected value of position in the perturbed ground state. First, writing  $x$  in terms of the annihilation and creation operators, the ket term is

$$\begin{aligned} x|0\rangle &= \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}}(a + a^\dagger) \left[ |0\rangle_0 + \frac{\lambda x_0^3}{3\sqrt{8}\hbar\omega} \left( -9|1\rangle_0 - \sqrt{6}|3\rangle_0 \right) \right] \\ &= \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{2}}|1\rangle_0 + \frac{\lambda x_0^4}{12\hbar\omega} \left[ -9|0\rangle_0 - \sqrt{6}\sqrt{3}|2\rangle_0 + |1\rangle_0 - 9\sqrt{2}|2\rangle_0 - \sqrt{6}\sqrt{4}|4\rangle_0 \right]. \end{aligned}$$

Next, using the orthonormality of the  $|n_0\rangle$  states, the full expectation value is

$$\langle 0|x|0\rangle = -\frac{\lambda x_0^4}{12\hbar\omega}(9 + 9) = -\frac{3\lambda x_0^4}{2\hbar\omega}.$$

In other words, according to perturbation theory, the position expectation value in the perturbed state  $|0\rangle$  shifts left from the origin to the region of negative  $x$ .

## 13 Thirteenth Exercise Set

### 13.1 Theoretical Background for the Coming Problem

#### 13.1.1 Degenerate Perturbation Theory

- Consider the Hamiltonian  $H = H_0 + H'$  where  $H_0 \gg H'$  has the known energy eigenvalue relation

$$H_0|\psi\rangle = E^{(0)}|\psi\rangle$$

and the energy  $E^{(0)}$  is  $N$ -times degenerate, meaning the wavefunction  $|\psi\rangle$  can be written as the general linear combination

$$|\psi\rangle = \sum_{n=1}^N c_n |n\rangle \quad \text{where } H|n\rangle = E^{(0)}|n\rangle \text{ for each } n.$$

- In this course, we will consider only the first-order correction; the procedure to find this correction proceeds as follows:

1. Create a matrix of perturbation elements in a chosen basis of the subspace of degenerate states, i.e.  $\{|n\rangle\}$ . The matrix reads

$$\begin{pmatrix} \langle 1|H'|1\rangle & \langle 1|H'|2\rangle & \cdots & \langle 1|H'|N\rangle \\ \langle 2|H'|1\rangle & \langle 2|H'|2\rangle & \cdots & \langle 2|H'|N\rangle \\ \vdots & \cdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \langle N|H'|1\rangle & \langle N|H'|2\rangle & \cdots & \langle N|H'|N\rangle \end{pmatrix}.$$

2. Next, diagonalize the matrix and find its eigenvalues  $\lambda_j$  and eigenvectors  $\mathbf{u}_j$ . To first order in perturbation theory, the corrected energies are then

$$E_j = E^{(0)} + \lambda_j.$$

In general the degeneracy is broken if all of the eigenvalues  $\lambda_j$  are different, i.e.  $\lambda_j \neq \lambda_i$  for all  $i \neq j$ . Note that if certain eigenvalues  $\lambda_j$  are equal, then a degree of degeneracy remains in the corrected energy eigenvalues.

3. Finally, again to first order, the corrected eigenstates are

$$|\psi_j\rangle = \sum_{k=1}^N u_{jk} |k\rangle,$$

where  $\mathbf{u}_j$  is the perturbation matrix's eigenvector corresponding to  $\lambda_j$ , and  $u_{jk}$  is  $\mathbf{u}_j$ 's  $k$ -th component.

### 13.1.2 Review of Hydrogen Atom Eigenvalues and Eigenfunctions

- We now quickly review the unperturbed hydrogen states for  $H_0$ . In Dirac notation:

$$H_0 |nlm_l\rangle |m_s\rangle = E_n |nlm_l\rangle |m_s\rangle,$$

where  $n$  is principle quantum number,  $l$  is magnitude of orbital angular momentum. The energy eigenvalue depends only on  $n$ ; it is

$$E_n = -\frac{\text{Ry}}{n^2},$$

where  $\text{Ry} = 13.6 \text{ eV}$  is the Rydberg energy unit. The quantum numbers take the values  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ ;  $l = 0, \dots, n-1$ ;  $m_l = -l, \dots, l$  and  $m_s \in \{-1/2, 1/2\}$ ; we write the  $m_s$  states as  $|\downarrow\rangle$  and  $|\uparrow\rangle$ .

- The coming problem involves the first excited state with  $n = 2$ , so we give  $n = 2$  special consideration here. The energy eigenvalues of the first excited state is

$$E_2 = -\frac{\text{Ry}}{4}.$$

We now consider the degeneracy of the first excited state. There are 8 possible linearly independent eigenfunctions with energy  $E_2$ ; these are

$$\begin{array}{ll} |200\rangle |\uparrow\rangle, & |200\rangle |\downarrow\rangle \\ |211\rangle |\uparrow\rangle, & |211\rangle |\downarrow\rangle \\ |210\rangle |\uparrow\rangle, & |210\rangle |\downarrow\rangle \\ |21-1\rangle |\uparrow\rangle, & |21-1\rangle |\downarrow\rangle \end{array}.$$

- Next, we consider the radially-dependent wavefunction  $R_{nl}(r)$  and spherical harmonics  $Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi)$  in the expression

$$\psi_{nlm}(\mathbf{r}) = R_{nl}(r) Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi).$$

For our problem we will need the following radial functions:

$$\begin{aligned} R_{20}(r) &= \frac{2}{(2r_B)^{3/2}} \left(1 - \frac{r}{2r_B}\right) e^{-\frac{r}{2r_B}} \\ R_{21}(r) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}(2r_B)^{3/2}} \frac{r}{r_B} e^{-\frac{r}{2r_B}}, \end{aligned}$$



where  $r_B$  is the Bohr radius, and the following spherical harmonics

$$\begin{aligned} Y_{00}(\theta, \phi) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi}} \\ Y_{11}(\phi, \theta) &= -\sqrt{\frac{3}{8\pi}} \sin \theta e^{i\phi} \\ Y_{10}(\phi, \theta) &= \sqrt{\frac{3}{4\pi}} \cos \theta \\ Y_{1-1}(\phi, \theta) &= \sqrt{\frac{3}{8\pi}} \sin \theta e^{-i\phi}. \end{aligned}$$

Note the presence of  $m \in -1, 0, 1$  in the exponents of the spherical harmonics  $Y_{11}$ ,  $Y_{10}$  and  $Y_{1-1}$ .

### 13.1.3 Parity Symmetry

- The parity operator  $\mathcal{P}$  is defined by the relation

$$\mathcal{P}\psi(\mathbf{r}) = \psi(-\mathbf{r}).$$

In other words, the parity operator reverses a wavefunction's spatial coordinates.

- Next, we assume the generic eigenvalue relation

$$\mathcal{P}\psi(\mathbf{r}) = p\psi(\mathbf{r})$$

and apply the parity operator to get

$$\mathcal{P}[\mathcal{P}\psi(\mathbf{r})] = \mathcal{P}^2\psi(\mathbf{r}) = p^2\psi(\mathbf{r}) = \psi(\mathbf{r}).$$

which implies  $p = \pm 1$ . The eigenvalues of  $P$  are thus  $\pm 1$ . We say that a wavefunction  $\psi$  has even parity if  $p = 1$  and odd parity if  $p = -1$ .

### Parity and the Hydrogen Eigenfunctions

- We now consider the action of the parity operator on the hydrogen eigenfunctions:

$$\mathcal{P}\psi_{nlm}(\mathbf{r}) = \mathcal{P}[R_{nl}(r)Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi)] = R_{nl}(r)\mathcal{P}Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi),$$

where we note that  $R_{nl}(r)$  is unaffected because the distance  $r$  is unchanged by parity inversion.

- Next, we will show that  $[\mathcal{P}, \mathbf{L}] = [\mathcal{P}, (L_x, L_y, L_z)] = 0$ . The derivation reads

$$\begin{aligned} [\mathcal{P}, L_z] &= \mathcal{P}L_z - L_z\mathcal{P} = \mathcal{P}(xp_y - yp_x) - L_z\mathcal{P} = [(-x)(-p_y) - (-y)(-p_x)]\mathcal{P} - L_z\mathcal{P} \\ &= (xp_y - yp_x)\mathcal{P} - L_z\mathcal{P} = L_z\mathcal{P} - L_z\mathcal{P} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

The procedure for  $L_x$  and  $L_y$  is analogous, and the end result is  $[\mathcal{P}, \mathbf{L}] = 0$ .

- Since  $[\mathcal{P}, \mathbf{L}] = 0$ , both  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathbf{L}$  have mutual eigenfunctions, meaning the spherical harmonics, which are nominally eigenfunctions of  $\mathbf{L}$ , are also eigenfunctions of  $\mathcal{P}$ .

Without derivation, the corresponding eigenvalue between  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $Y_{lm}$  is

$$\mathcal{P}Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi) = (-1)^l Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi).$$

### 13.2 Hydrogen Atom in a Homogeneous Electric Field

Consider a hydrogen atom placed in a homogeneous electric field of magnitude  $\mathcal{E}$ . Analyze the resulting energy splitting of the first excited state.

- The system's Hamiltonian is

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} - \frac{q^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r} - q\mathcal{E}z,$$

where  $r$  is the distance between electron and proton and  $q = -e_0$  is the electron's charge. The unperturbed Hamiltonian  $H_0$  and perturbation term  $H'$  are

$$H_0 = \frac{p^2}{2m} - \frac{q^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r} \quad \text{and} \quad H' = -q\mathcal{E}z.$$

Note that neither Hamiltonian contains a spin-dependent term, which corresponds to our problem's rotation symmetry about the  $z$  axis. This symmetry will greatly simplify our problem when we calculate matrix elements.

- On to our perturbation matrix, which has dimensions  $8 \times 8$  because of first excited state's  $N = 8$  degeneracy. A general matrix element takes the form

$$\langle 2lm_l m_s | H' | 2l' m'_l m'_s \rangle.$$

In principle there are  $8 \times 8 = 64$  matrix elements, but we can take care of a lot of these by considering the problem's symmetry.

- First, note that  $H' = -q\mathcal{E}z$  acts only in the position Hilbert space. We can thus factor the spin term  $|m_s\rangle$  out of the main matrix element to get

$$\langle 2lm_l m_s | H' | 2l' m'_l m'_s \rangle = \langle 2lm_l | H' | 2l' m'_l \rangle \langle m_s | m'_s \rangle = \langle 2lm_l | H' | 2l' m'_l \rangle \delta_{m_s, m'_s}.$$

We then write the  $8 \times 8$  matrix in four blocks of size  $4 \times 4$  the value of  $\langle m_s | m'_s \rangle$ . The off-diagonal blocks are zero because of  $\delta_{m_s, m'_s}$ , while the two diagonal blocks are equal because of the symmetry of  $\delta_{m_s, m'_s} = \delta_{m'_s, m_s}$ .

The perturbation matrix is thus a block diagonal matrix with two identical  $4 \times 4$  diagonal blocks, which we call  $\mathbf{D}$ . Because these  $\mathbf{D}$  sub-matrices are identical, each of the perturbation matrix's eigenvalues is at least doubly degenerate. We now focus only the  $4 \times 4$  sub-matrix  $\mathbf{D}$ .

- Next, we note that the Hamiltonian  $H'$  commutes with the angular momentum operator  $L'_z$ :

$$[H', L_z] = [-q\mathcal{E}z, xp_y, yp_x] = 0..$$

This is because both of the  $\partial_y$  and  $\partial_x$  terms in  $p_y$  and  $p_x$  commute with  $z$ , as do the  $x$  and  $y$  coordinates. Because  $[H', L_z] = 0$ , the Hamiltonian  $H'$  is invariant with respect to rotation in the  $xy$  plane about the  $z$  axis.

*Note:* going forward, since we have already used the spin term  $\langle m_s | m'_s \rangle$  to introduce the sub-matrix  $\mathbf{D}$ , we only need to consider the position Hilbert space  $|nlm_l\rangle \equiv |nlm\rangle$ , where we'll write  $m_l = m$  since there is no longer any ambiguity with  $m_s$ .

- We now consider the basis in which we find the matrix elements. The quantum number  $l$  corresponds to the operator  $L^2$  and  $m$  to  $L_z$ , and in the basis of  $L^2$  and  $L_z$ , the relevant eigenvalue relations read

$$L^2 |nlm\rangle = \hbar^2 l(l+1) |nlm\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad L_z |nlm\rangle = \hbar m |nlm\rangle,$$

or, in the coordinate representation in terms of the spherical harmonics,

$$L^2 Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi) = \hbar^2 l(l+1) Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi) \quad \text{and} \quad L_z Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi) = \hbar m Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi).$$

- Next, we consider the matrix element

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{M}_{HL_z} &\equiv \langle 2lm | [H', L_z] | 2l'm' \rangle = \langle 2lm | (H' L_z - L_z H') | 2l'm' \rangle \\ &= \langle 2lm | H' L_z | 2l'm' \rangle - \langle 2lm | L_z H' | 2l'm' \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

Next, since  $L_z$  is Hermitian, which means  $L_z^\dagger = L_z$  and  $\hbar m \in \mathbb{R}$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} \langle 2lm | L_z H' | 2l'm' \rangle &= \langle L_z 2lm | H' | 2l'm' \rangle = \langle (\hbar m) 2lm | H' | 2l'm' \rangle \\ &= (\hbar m)^* \langle 2lm | H' | 2l'm' \rangle = \hbar m \langle 2lm | H' | 2l'm' \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

The matrix element  $\mathcal{M}_{HL_z}$  is then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{M}_{HL_z} &= \langle 2lm | H' L_z | 2l'm' \rangle - \langle 2lm | L_z H' | 2l'm' \rangle \\ &= \hbar m' \langle 2lm | H' | 2l'm' \rangle - \hbar m \langle 2lm | H' | 2l'm' \rangle \\ &= \hbar(m' - m) \langle 2lm | H' | 2l'm' \rangle \equiv 0. \end{aligned}$$

The last equality holds from  $[H', L_z] = 0 \implies \mathcal{M}_{HL_z} \equiv \langle 2lm | [H', L_z] | 2l'm' \rangle = 0$ . The equality  $\hbar(m' - m) \langle 2lm | H' | 2l'm' \rangle \equiv 0$  implies

$$\langle 2lm | H' | 2l'm' \rangle = 0 \quad \text{if} \quad m' \neq m.$$

- We now return to the  $4 \times 4$  sub-matrix  $\mathbf{D}$  and choose a basis so that states with the same  $m$  are grouped together and sub-divide  $\mathbf{D}$  into blocks in which the  $m$  terms in the bra and ket terms are equal. We choose columns to run in the order  $|200\rangle, |210\rangle, |211\rangle, |21-1\rangle$  and rows to run in the order  $\langle 200|, \langle 210|, \langle 211|, \langle 21-1|$ . In terms of  $|lm\rangle$  (dropping  $n=2$  from  $|2lm\rangle$  for conciseness) the matrix  $\mathbf{D}$  is then

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} \langle 00 | H' | 00 \rangle & \langle 00 | H' | 10 \rangle & \langle 00 | H' | 11 \rangle & \langle 00 | H' | 1-1 \rangle \\ \langle 10 | H' | 00 \rangle & \langle 10 | H' | 10 \rangle & \langle 10 | H' | 11 \rangle & \langle 10 | H' | 1-1 \rangle \\ \langle 11 | H' | 00 \rangle & \langle 11 | H' | 10 \rangle & \langle 11 | H' | 11 \rangle & \langle 11 | H' | 1-1 \rangle \\ \langle 1-1 | H' | 00 \rangle & \langle 1-1 | H' | 10 \rangle & \langle 1-1 | H' | 11 \rangle & \langle 1-1 | H' | 1-1 \rangle \end{pmatrix}.$$

We then apply the earlier result  $\langle 2lm | H' | 2l'm' \rangle = 0$  if  $m' \neq m$ , which simplifies the matrix to

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} \langle 00 | H' | 00 \rangle & \langle 00 | H' | 10 \rangle & 0 & 0 \\ \langle 10 | H' | 00 \rangle & \langle 10 | H' | 10 \rangle & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \langle 11 | H' | 11 \rangle & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \langle 1-1 | H' | 1-1 \rangle \end{pmatrix}.$$

Next, we consider parity symmetry, which will simplify the matrix even further.

### Parity Symmetry

- Recall from the theory section beginning this exercise set that  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathbf{L}$  commute, so the spherical harmonics  $Y_{lm}$  are eigenfunctions of  $\mathcal{P}$ . The relevant eigenvalue relation is

$$\mathcal{P}Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi) = (-1)^l Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi) \quad \text{or, in Dirac notation,} \quad \mathcal{P}|lm\rangle = (-1)^l |lm\rangle.$$

Next, we show that  $H'$  and  $P$  anti-commute, i.e.

$$\{H', \mathcal{P}\} = H'\mathcal{P} + \mathcal{P}H' = H'\mathcal{P} + \mathcal{P}(-q\mathcal{E}z) = H'\mathcal{P} + (-q\mathcal{E})(-z)\mathcal{P} = H'\mathcal{P} - H'\mathcal{P} = 0.$$

We then apply  $\{H', \mathcal{P}\} = 0$  and the eigenvalue relation  $\mathcal{P}|lm\rangle = (-1)^l |lm\rangle$  to the matrix elements in the  $\mathbf{D}$  matrix to get

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{M}_{H\mathcal{P}} &= \langle 2lm|\{H', \mathcal{P}\}|2l'm'\rangle = \langle 2lm|H'\mathcal{P}|2l'm'\rangle + \langle 2lm|\mathcal{P}H'|2l'm'\rangle \\ &= \langle 2lm|H'|2l'm'\rangle (-1)^{l'} + \langle 2lm|H'|2l'm'\rangle (-1)^l \\ &= [(-1)^{l'} + (-1)^l] \langle 2lm|H'|2l'm'\rangle \equiv 0, \end{aligned}$$

where the last equality  $\mathcal{M}_{H\mathcal{P}} = \langle 2lm|\{H', \mathcal{P}\}|2l'm'\rangle = 0$  holds because  $\{H', \mathcal{P}\} = 0$ . The end result is

$$(-1)^{l'} + (-1)^l \neq 0 \implies \langle 2lm|H'|2l'm'\rangle = 0.$$

In other words, if  $l$  and  $l'$  are either both even or both odd, then  $\langle 2lm|H'|2l'm'\rangle = 0$ .

- We now return to matrix  $\mathbf{D}$ , which read (using only  $|lm\rangle$  and not  $|2lm\rangle$  for shorthand)

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} \langle 00|H'|00\rangle & \langle 00|H'|10\rangle & 0 & 0 \\ \langle 10|H'|00\rangle & \langle 10|H'|10\rangle & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \langle 11|H'|11\rangle & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \langle 1-1|H'|1-1\rangle \end{pmatrix}.$$

We now apply the result  $(-1)^{l'} + (-1)^l \neq 0 \implies \langle 2lm|H'|2l'm'\rangle = 0$ , which means that the diagonal matrix elements in the diagonal blocks are zero. The matrix simplifies further to

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \langle 200|H'|210\rangle & 0 & 0 \\ \langle 210|H'|200\rangle & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

where we have returned to the longer  $|nlm\rangle$  notation, since the matrix has cleared up considerably.

- Recall that  $\mathbf{D}$  is a diagonal sub-matrix corresponding to the Hamiltonian  $H'$ , which is a Hermitian operator. Since Hermitian operators correspond to Hermitian matrices, the matrix  $\mathbf{D}$  must also be Hermitian, which implies

$$\langle 200|H'|210\rangle = \langle 210|H'|200\rangle^*.$$

We are conveniently left with a single non-zero matrix element from the 64 elements in the original perturbation matrix.

- We find the matrix element  $\langle 200|H'|210\rangle$  by direct calculation in the coordinate representation. Substituting in the relevant radial eigenfunctions and spherical harmonics, which were given in the theory section opening this exercise set, and converting to spherical coordinates (e.g.  $z = r \cos \theta$ ), the calculation reads

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle 200|H'|210\rangle &= \int d^3\mathbf{r} \psi_{200}^*(\mathbf{r}) (-q\mathcal{E}z) \psi_{210}(\mathbf{r}) \\
&= -q\mathcal{E} \int_0^\infty r^2 dr \int_{-1}^1 d[\cos \theta] \int_0^{2\pi} d\phi \left[ \frac{2}{(2r_B)^{3/2}} \left(1 - \frac{r}{2r_B}\right) e^{-\frac{r}{r_B}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi}} \right] r \cos \theta \\
&\quad \cdot \left[ \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \frac{1}{(2r_B)^{3/2}} \frac{r}{r_B} e^{-\frac{r}{r_B}} \sqrt{\frac{3}{4\pi}} \cos \theta \right] \\
&= -q\mathcal{E} \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4\pi} \int_0^\infty dr \frac{r^4}{(2r_B)^3 r_B} \left(1 - \frac{r}{2r_B}\right) e^{-\frac{r}{r_B}} \cdot \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} \int_{-1}^1 d[\cos \theta] \cos^2 \theta \int_0^{2\pi} d\phi \\
&= -q\mathcal{E} \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4\pi} \cdot \frac{r_B}{8} \int_0^\infty u^4 \left(1 - \frac{u}{2}\right) e^{-u} du \cdot \left(\frac{2}{3}\right) \cdot (2\pi),
\end{aligned}$$

where we have introduced the new variable  $u = \frac{r}{r_B}$ . We find the integral over  $u$  using the gamma function, and the result is

$$\langle 200|H'|210\rangle = -q\mathcal{E}r_B \frac{1}{12} \left(4! - \frac{1}{2}5!\right) = 3q\mathcal{E}r_B.$$

- Since  $\langle 210|H'|200\rangle = \langle 200|H'|210\rangle^* = (3q\mathcal{E}r_B)^* = 3q\mathcal{E}r_B$ , the matrix  $\mathbf{D}$  is

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 3q\mathcal{E}r_B & 0 & 0 \\ 3q\mathcal{E}r_B & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Because  $\mathbf{D}$  has two zero diagonal elements, it has two zero eigenvalues

$$\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 0.$$

The matrix  $\mathbf{D}$ 's two non-zero eigenvalues come from  $\mathbf{D}$ 's  $2 \times 2$  upper-left sub-matrix and are the zeroes of the second-degree characteristic polynomial

$$(-\lambda)^2 - (3q\mathcal{E}r_B)^2 = 0.$$

The results are

$$\lambda_3 = 3q\mathcal{E}r_B = -3e_0\mathcal{E}r_B \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_4 = -3q\mathcal{E}r_B = 3e_0\mathcal{E}r_B.$$

- Finally, recall the original  $8 \times 8$  perturbation matrix contains two identical  $4 \times 4$  sub-matrices  $\mathbf{D}$  along its diagonal, so the degeneracy of  $\mathbf{D}$ 's eigenvalues  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3$  and  $\lambda_4$  are doubled when considering the original  $8 \times 8$  perturbation matrix.

As a result, the eigenvalues  $\lambda_3$  and  $\lambda_4$ , which decrease and increase linearly with  $\mathcal{E}$ , respectively, have twofold degeneracy two.

Meanwhile, the energy eigenvalues  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$ , which are unchanged in the presence of an electric field, have fourfold degeneracy.

- The unchanged eigenvalues  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  with fourfold degeneracy correspond to the four-dimensional linear combination

$$|\psi_{1,2}\rangle = a|211\rangle|\uparrow\rangle + b|211\rangle|\downarrow\rangle + c|21-1\rangle|\uparrow\rangle + d|21-1\rangle|\downarrow\rangle,$$

where we require  $a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2 = 1$  for normalization.

- To find the  $|nlm\rangle|m_s\rangle$  states corresponding to the lowered energy  $\lambda_3$ , we solve the  $2 \times 2$  eigenvector problem

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3e_0\mathcal{E}r_B & -3e_0\mathcal{E}r_B \\ -3e_0\mathcal{E}r_B & 3e_0\mathcal{E}r_B \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} u_{3,200} \\ u_{3,210} \end{pmatrix} = 0 \implies \begin{pmatrix} u_{3,200} \\ u_{3,210} \end{pmatrix} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The state associated the eigenvalue  $\lambda_3$  is thus the two-dimensional linear combination

$$|\psi_3\rangle = \frac{1 \cdot |200\rangle + 1 \cdot |210\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

- To find the  $|nlm\rangle|m_s\rangle$  states corresponding to the raised energy  $\lambda_4$ , we solve the  $2 \times 2$  eigenvector problem

$$\begin{pmatrix} -3e_0\mathcal{E}r_B & -3e_0\mathcal{E}r_B \\ -3e_0\mathcal{E}r_B & -3e_0\mathcal{E}r_B \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} u_{4,200} \\ u_{4,210} \end{pmatrix} = 0 \implies \begin{pmatrix} u_{4,200} \\ u_{4,210} \end{pmatrix} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The state associated the eigenvalue  $\lambda_4$  is thus the two-dimensional linear combination

$$|\psi_4\rangle = \frac{1 \cdot |200\rangle - 1 \cdot |210\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

### Quick Summary:

- In the presence of the basic hydrogen atom Hamiltonian  $H_0$ , i.e.

$$H_0 = \frac{p^2}{2m} - \frac{q^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r},$$

a hydrogen atom's first excited state has energy degeneracy  $N = 8$ , and the corresponding energy eigenfunctions are any functions in the 8-dimensional Hilbert space spanned by the 8 basis functions

$$\begin{array}{ll} |200\rangle|\uparrow\rangle, & |200\rangle|\downarrow\rangle \\ |211\rangle|\uparrow\rangle, & |211\rangle|\downarrow\rangle \\ |210\rangle|\uparrow\rangle, & |210\rangle|\downarrow\rangle \\ |21-1\rangle|\uparrow\rangle, & |21-1\rangle|\downarrow\rangle \end{array}.$$

In other words, any linear combination of the 8 basis functions is an eigenfunction of  $H_0$  with the same energy  $E_2^{(0)} = -\frac{\text{Ry}}{4}$ .

- We then turn on a homogeneous electric field  $\mathcal{E}$ , which adds a perturbation  $H' = -qz\mathcal{E}$  to the original Hamiltonian  $H_0$ . As a result, the originally eight-times degenerate energy  $E_2^{(0)}$  splits into

- A four-times degenerate energy, unchanged relative to  $E_2^{(0)}$ , corresponding to  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$ . The corresponding eigenfunctions come from the four-dimensional linear combination

$$|\psi_{1,2}\rangle = a |211\rangle |\uparrow\rangle + b |211\rangle |\downarrow\rangle + c |21-1\rangle |\uparrow\rangle + d |21-1\rangle |\downarrow\rangle,$$

where  $a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2 = 1$ ;

- a two-times degenerate energy level

$$E_2^{(0)} + \lambda_3 = E_2^{(0)} - 3e_0\mathcal{E}r_B,$$

lowered relative to  $E_2^{(0)}$  in proportion to the electric field  $\mathcal{E}$ . The corresponding eigenfunctions come from the two-dimensional linear combination

$$|\psi_3\rangle = \frac{1 \cdot |200\rangle + 1 \cdot |210\rangle}{\sqrt{2}};$$

- and a two-times degenerate energy level

$$E_2^{(0)} + \lambda_4 = E_2^{(0)} + 3e_0\mathcal{E}r_B,$$

raised relative to  $E_2^{(0)}$  in proportion to the electric field  $\mathcal{E}$ . The corresponding eigenfunctions come from the two-dimensional linear combination

$$|\psi_4\rangle = \frac{1 \cdot |200\rangle - 1 \cdot |210\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

## 14 Fourteenth Exercise Set

### 14.1 Theory: First-Order Time-Dependent Perturbations

- Consider a Hamiltonian of the form

$$H(t) = H_0 + H'(t),$$

where  $H_0$  is analytically solvable and time-independent, while the time-dependent perturbation  $H'(t)$  is small relative to  $H_0$ .

- Assume the eigenstates and eigenvalues of  $H_0$  obey

$$H_0 |n\rangle = E_n |n\rangle,$$

where  $|n\rangle$  denotes  $H_0$ 's (and not  $H$ 's) energy eigenstates.

- We then aim to solve the time-dependent Schrödinger equation

$$i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\psi, t\rangle = H(t) |\psi, t\rangle.$$

First, we expand the wavefunction in the basis of  $H_0$  eigenstates  $\{|n\rangle\}$ :

$$|\psi, t\rangle = \sum_n c_n(t) |n, t\rangle \quad \text{where} \quad |n, t\rangle = |n\rangle e^{-i \frac{E_n}{\hbar} t}.$$

We then substitute the ansatz for  $|\psi, t\rangle$  into the time-dependent Schrödinger equation, which results in a system of coupled integral equations for the coefficients  $c_n(t)$  of the form

$$c_n(t) = c_n(t_0) - \frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{t_0}^t dt \langle n, t' | H'(t') | m, t' \rangle c_m(t').$$

Note that up to this step we have not made any approximations—the above system of integral equations is equivalent to the time-dependent Schrödinger equation for  $|\psi, t\rangle$ .

- To proceed, we make the following approximation:

Assume  $H'(t)$  is weak enough that it doesn't drastically disturb  $|\psi, t\rangle$  from the initial state  $|\psi, t_0\rangle$ , so that the coefficients  $c_n(t)$  don't change much from their initial values  $c_n(t_0)$

Under the assumption  $c_m(t) \approx c_m(t_0)$ , the coefficients  $c_n(t)$  become

$$\begin{aligned} c_n(t) &\approx c_n(t_0) - \frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{t_0}^t dt' \langle n, t' | H'(t') | m, t' \rangle c_m(t_0) \\ &= c_n(t_0) - \frac{i}{\hbar} c_m(t_0) \int_{t_0}^t dt' \langle n, t' | H'(t') | m, t' \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

- To solve the problem, we solve for the coefficients  $c_n(t)$ , and then find the perturbed eigenfunction with

$$|\psi, t\rangle = \sum_n c_n(t) |n, t\rangle = \sum_n c_n(t) |n\rangle e^{-i \frac{E_n}{\hbar} t},$$

where  $|n\rangle$  and  $E_n$  are the energy eigenfunctions and eigenvalues of the static Hamiltonian  $H_0$ . It is then best practice to retrospectively check that the coefficients  $c_m$  didn't actually change much—if they did, the approximation  $c_m(t) \approx c_m(t_0)$  would not hold and we would need a higher-order approximation, which is beyond the scope of this course.

## 14.2 Hydrogen Atom Exposed to an Electric Field Pulse

Consider an electron in a hydrogen atom in an electric field  $\mathcal{E}(t)$ , with Hamiltonian

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} - \frac{q^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r} - q\mathcal{E}(t)z, \quad \mathcal{E}(t) = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{1 + \left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)^2}.$$

Before the electric field is turned on (at  $t \rightarrow -\infty$ ), the electron is in the ground state, i.e.

$$|\psi, -\infty\rangle = |100\rangle.$$

Determine the probability of finding the electron in the first excited state when the electric field pulse ends at  $t = \infty$ .

*Note:* Formally, a complete hydrogen atom eigenstate reads  $|nlm_l m_s\rangle$ , but since spin terms don't occur in the Hamiltonian, spin effects don't play a role in our problem and we'll leave out  $|m_s\rangle$  for conciseness and write the eigenstates as  $|nlm\rangle$ .



- The first excited state has principle quantum number  $n = 2$ , and the possible  $|nlm\rangle$  eigenfunctions in the first excited state are  $|200\rangle$ ,  $|211\rangle$ ,  $|210\rangle$  and  $|21-1\rangle$ . We define the probability

$$P_{2lm}(\infty) = |c_{2lm}(\infty)|^2,$$

which is the probability of finding the electron in the state  $|2lm\rangle$  at time  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . Our goal is to find this  $P_{2lm}$  for the four possible  $|2lm\rangle$  states, and then find the total probability of finding the electron in the first excited state with

$$P_2 = P_{200} + P_{211} + P_{210} + P_{21-1}.$$

- In the electron's initial ground state  $|\psi, -\infty\rangle = |100\rangle$ , the corresponding coefficient  $c_{nlm}$  is  $c_{100}(-\infty) = 1$ , while  $c_{nlm}(-\infty) = 0$  for all other  $n$ ,  $l$ , and  $m$ . The final coefficients  $c_{2lm}(t)$  at  $t \rightarrow \infty$  are thus

$$\begin{aligned} c_{2lm}(\infty) &= c_{2lm}(-\infty) - \frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt' \langle 2lm, t' | H'(t) | n'l'm', t' \rangle c_{n'l'm'}(-\infty) \\ &= c_{2lm}(-\infty) + \frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt' \langle 2lm, t' | -q\mathcal{E}(t')z | 100, t' \rangle c_{100}(-\infty) \\ &= \frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt' \langle 2lm, t' | -q\mathcal{E}(t')z | 100, t' \rangle, \end{aligned}$$

where we have used  $c_{nlm}(\infty) = 0$  for all  $(nlm) \neq (100)$  to simplify the system of equations in the first line to the single equation in the second line, and then  $c_{2lm}(-\infty) = 0$  and  $c_{100}(-\infty) = 1$  to get the third line.

- Next, we substitute in  $|nlm, t\rangle = |nlm\rangle e^{-i\frac{E_n}{\hbar}t}$  to get

$$c_{2lm}(\infty) = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt' e^{i\frac{E_{2lm}}{\hbar}t'} \langle 2lm | -q\mathcal{E}(t')z | 100 \rangle e^{-i\frac{E_{100}}{\hbar}t'}.$$

Note that, as usual, we must take the complex conjugate of the exponent in the bra term. We then substitute in the Rydberg energy formula  $E_{nlm} = E_n = \frac{R_y}{n^2}$  to get

$$c_{2lm}(\infty) = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt' e^{i\frac{(E_2-E_1)}{\hbar}t'} \frac{-q\mathcal{E}_0}{1 + \left(\frac{t'}{\tau}\right)^2} \langle 2lm | z | 100 \rangle.$$

We have two integrals: one over time and one over position (implicitly contained in the matrix element  $\langle 2lm | z | 100 \rangle$ ).

- We begin by finding the matrix element  $\langle 2lm | z | 100 \rangle$ . We reuse a result from the previous exercise set: since  $[z, L_z] = 0$ , the matrix elements  $\langle 2lm | z | 100 \rangle$  are diagonal with respect to  $L_z$ 's quantum number  $m$ . In other words, the matrix element is non-zero only if the  $m$  quantum numbers are equal on both sides of the bracket, i.e.

$$\langle 2lm | z | 100 \rangle = \langle 2lm | z | 100 \rangle \delta_{m,0}.$$

Next we note that  $\{z, \mathcal{P}\} = 0$ , which, again reusing a result from the previous exercise set, means that

$$\langle nlm | z | n'l'm' \rangle = 0 \quad \text{if} \quad (-1)^{l'} + (-1)^l \neq 0.$$

In our case the matrix element  $\langle 2lm|z|100\rangle$  is no zero only for  $l$  satisfying

$$(-1)^l + (-1)^0 = 0 \implies l = 1.$$

Because of the above to results, i.e.  $l = 1$  and  $\langle 2lm|z|100\rangle = \langle 2lm|z|100\rangle \delta_{m,0}$ , it follows that  $c_{200}(\infty) = c_{211}(\infty) = c_{21-1}(\infty) = 0$ . In other words, the probability of finding the electron in the first excited state at  $t \rightarrow \infty$  is simply

$$P_2 = P_{200} + P_{211} + P_{210} + P_{21-1} = 0 + 0 + P_{210} + 0 = |c_{210}|^2,$$

and we only need to calculate the single matrix element  $\langle 210|z|100\rangle$ .

- In terms of spherical coordinates and the radial and spherical harmonic eigenfunctions, which are given in the theory section opening the previous exercise set, the matrix element  $\langle 210|z|100\rangle \equiv \langle 210|r \cos \theta|100\rangle$  is

$$\begin{aligned} \langle 210|z|100\rangle &= \int d\mathbf{r} R_{21}^* Y_{10}^*(\theta, \phi) r \cos \theta R_{10}(r) Y_{00}(\theta, \phi) \\ &= \int_0^\infty r^2 dr \int_{-1}^1 d[\cos \theta] \int_0^{2\pi} d\phi \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \frac{1}{(2r_B)^{3/2}} \frac{r}{r_B} e^{-\frac{r}{2a_0}} \right) \cdot \\ &\quad \cdot \left( \sqrt{\frac{3}{4\pi}} \cos \theta \right) r \cos \theta \left( \frac{2}{r_B^{3/2}} e^{-\frac{r}{r_B}} \right) \frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi}} \\ &= \int_0^\infty \frac{r^4}{2^{3/2} r_B^4} e^{-\frac{3}{2} \frac{r}{r_B}} dr \int_{-1}^1 d[\cos \theta] \cos^2 \theta \\ &= \frac{1}{2^{3/2} r_B^4} \int_0^\infty \left( \frac{2r_B}{3} \right)^5 u^4 e^{-u} du \cdot \left[ \frac{\cos^3 \theta}{3} \right]_{\cos \theta = -1}^1 \\ &= r_B \frac{2^{7/2}}{3^5} \cdot \frac{2}{3} \int_0^\infty u^4 e^{-u} du = r_B \frac{2^{7/2}}{3^5} \cdot \frac{2}{3} \cdot 4! \\ &= r_B \frac{2^{15/2}}{3^5}, \end{aligned}$$

where we have introduced the new variables  $u = \frac{3r}{2r_B}$  and evaluated the integral over  $u$  with the gamma function.

- After substituting in the just-derived matrix element  $\langle 210|z|100\rangle$ , the coefficient  $c_{210}(\infty)$  simplifies to

$$c_{210}(\infty) = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{-\infty}^\infty dt' e^{i \frac{(E_2 - E_1)}{\hbar} t'} \frac{-q\mathcal{E}_0}{1 - \left(\frac{t'}{\tau}\right)^2} \cdot \left( r_B \frac{2^{15/2}}{3^5} \right).$$

We now find the integral over time, which we will do with complex integration and the residue theorem. First, to make the complex poles more obvious, we rewrite the integral as

$$c_{210}(\infty) \propto \int_{-\infty}^\infty \frac{\tau^2 e^{i \frac{(E_2 - E_1)}{\hbar} t'}}{(t' + i\tau)(t' - i\tau)} dt',$$

where we have dropped constant factors for conciseness. We then interpret  $t'$  as a complex variable with  $\text{Re } t'$  and  $\text{Im } t'$  spanning the complex. We will close our complex integration contour as a semicircle in the upper complex plane, so that the

exponential factor in the integrand's numerator of converges, since  $\text{Im } t' > 0$  in the upper complex plane. We then define the complex function

$$f(z) = \frac{\tau^2 e^{i \frac{(E_2 - E_1)}{\hbar} z}}{(z + i\tau)(z - i\tau)}$$

and apply the residue theorem at the complex pole  $t' = i\tau$ . As the semicircular integration contour's radius approaches infinity, the integral approaches

$$\begin{aligned} \oint f(z) dz &\rightarrow 0 + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\tau^2 e^{i \frac{(E_2 - E_1)}{\hbar} t'}}{(t' + i\tau)(t' - i\tau)} dt' = 2\pi i \text{Res}(f(z); i\tau) \\ &= 2\pi i \frac{\tau^2 e^{-\frac{E_2 - E_1}{\hbar} \tau}}{2i\tau} = \pi \tau e^{-\frac{E_2 - E_1}{\hbar} \tau}. \end{aligned}$$

Using the above integral, the coefficient  $c_{210}(\infty)$  is then

$$\begin{aligned} c_{210}(\infty) &= -\frac{i}{\hbar} \left( r_B \frac{2^{15/2}}{3^5} \right) (-q\mathcal{E}_0) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\tau^2 e^{i \frac{(E_2 - E_1)}{\hbar} t'}}{(t' + i\tau)(t' - i\tau)} dt' \\ &= \frac{i}{\hbar} r_B \frac{2^{15/2}}{3^5} q\mathcal{E}_0 \pi \tau e^{-\frac{E_2 - E_1}{\hbar} \tau}. \end{aligned}$$

- With  $c_{210}(\infty)$  known, the probability  $P_{210}$  of the electron transition to the first excited state  $|210\rangle$ , and thus the probability of transitioning to the first excited state in general, is

$$P_2(\infty) = P_{210}(\infty) = |c_{210}(\infty)|^2 = \frac{2^{15}\pi^2}{3^{10}} \left( \frac{q\mathcal{E}_0 r_B}{\hbar} \right)^2 \tau^2 e^{-\frac{2(E_2 - E_1)}{\hbar} \tau}.$$

Note that  $P_{210}(\infty) \propto \mathcal{E}_0$ . This concludes the main portion of this problem.

- As a final note, we ask what value of  $\tau$  at fixed electric field amplitude  $\mathcal{E}_0$  will maximize the probability  $P_2(\infty)$ . We do this by finding the extrema of  $P_2(\infty)$  with respect to  $\tau$ , as in elementary single variable calculus. Ignoring the constant coefficients, the calculation reads

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &\equiv \frac{d}{d\tau} P_2(\infty) = 2\tau e^{-\frac{2(E_2 - E_1)}{\hbar} \tau} + \tau^2 \left( -2 \frac{E_2 - E_1}{\hbar} \right) e^{-\frac{2(E_2 - E_1)}{\hbar} \tau} \\ &= 1 - \tau \frac{E_2 - E_1}{\hbar} \\ \tau &= \frac{\hbar}{E_2 - E_1}. \end{aligned}$$

In other words, the pulse length maximizing the transition amplitude from the ground state to the first excited state is directly related to the energy difference between the two states.

### 14.3 Spin 1/2 Particle in a Time-Varying Magnetic Field

Consider a particle with spin  $s = 1/2$  in the initial state  $|\psi, 0\rangle = |\downarrow\rangle$  and Hamiltonian

$$H = \mu_B \boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{B}(t),$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$  is written in terms of the Pauli spin matrices as  $\boldsymbol{\sigma} = (\sigma_x, \sigma_y, \sigma_z)$ , and the magnetic field is

$$\mathbf{B}(t) = \left( B_x \frac{t}{\tau}, 0, B_z \right), \quad B_x \ll B_z.$$

Find the particle's wavefunction  $|\psi, \tau\rangle$  at  $t = \tau$ , and analyze the limiting cases of large and small  $\tau$ .

- The terms of the magnetic field  $\mathbf{B}$ 's components, the Hamiltonian reads

$$H(t) = \mu_B \boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{B}(t) = \mu_B \sigma_z B_z + \mu_B \sigma_x B_x \frac{t}{\tau}.$$

Assuming  $B_x \ll B_z$ , the static Hamiltonian is  $H_0 = \mu_B \sigma_z B_z$ , while the time-dependent perturbation term is  $H'(t) = \mu_B \sigma_x B_x \frac{t}{\tau}$ .

The magnetic field's  $x$  component  $B_x$  increase from 0 to  $B_x$  as  $t$  increases from 0 to  $\tau$ . In the initial state  $|\psi, 0\rangle = |\downarrow\rangle$ , the particle's spin points in the opposite direction of the magnetic field.

Since the particle has spin  $s = 1/2$ , the problem's eigenfunctions basis is spanned by the spin eigenfunctions  $|\uparrow\rangle$  and  $|\downarrow\rangle$ .

- We start by finding the energy eigenvalues and eigenstates of the static Hamiltonian  $H_0$ . Since  $H_0$  is proportional to  $L_z$  and the particle has  $s = 1/2$ , the eigenstates are  $|\downarrow\rangle$  and  $|\uparrow\rangle$ :

$$H_0 |\uparrow\rangle = \mu_B B_z |\uparrow\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad H_0 |\downarrow\rangle = -\mu_B B_z |\downarrow\rangle,$$

while the corresponding eigenvalues are  $E_\uparrow = \mu_B B_z$  and  $E_\downarrow = -\mu_B B_z$ . Note that the initial state  $|\psi, 0\rangle = |\downarrow\rangle$  is a ground state of the initial Hamiltonian  $H(t=0) = H_0$ .

- Next, using the general expression  $|n, t\rangle = |n\rangle e^{-i \frac{E_n}{\hbar} t}$  together with the energy eigenvalues  $E_\uparrow = \mu_B B_z$  and  $E_\downarrow = -\mu_B B_z$ , it follows that the basis functions  $|\uparrow\rangle$  and  $|\downarrow\rangle$  evolve in time as

$$|\uparrow, t\rangle = |\uparrow\rangle e^{-i \frac{\mu_B B_z}{\hbar} t} \quad \text{and} \quad |\downarrow, t\rangle = |\downarrow\rangle e^{i \frac{\mu_B B_z}{\hbar} t}.$$

The particle's wavefunction at  $t = \tau$  is thus the linear combination

$$|\psi, \tau\rangle = C_\uparrow(\tau) |\uparrow, \tau\rangle + C_\downarrow(\tau) |\downarrow, \tau\rangle.$$

- We find the first coefficient  $C_\uparrow(\tau)$  using the general approximation

$$c_n(t) \approx c_n(t_0) - \frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{t_0}^t \langle n, t' | H'(t') | m, t' \rangle c_m(t_0) dt'.$$

In our case, with the two dimensional eigenbasis  $\{|\uparrow\rangle, |\downarrow\rangle\}$ , the expression reads

$$C_\uparrow(\tau) = C_\uparrow(0) - \frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^\tau dt \langle \uparrow, t | H'(t) | \downarrow, t \rangle C_\downarrow(0) - \frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^\tau dt \langle \uparrow, t | H'(t) | \uparrow, t \rangle C_\uparrow(0).$$

Since  $C_\uparrow(0) = 0$  and  $C_\downarrow(0) = 1$  (because  $|\psi, 0\rangle = |\downarrow\rangle$ ), the expression simplifies to

$$C_\uparrow(\tau) = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^\tau dt \langle \uparrow, t | H'(t) | \downarrow, t \rangle.$$

- We find the second coefficient  $C_{\uparrow}(\tau)$  with

$$C_{\downarrow}(\tau) = C_{\downarrow}(0) - \frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^{\tau} dt \langle \downarrow, t | H'(t) | \downarrow, t \rangle C_{\downarrow}(0) - \frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^{\tau} dt \langle \downarrow, t | H'(t) | \uparrow, t \rangle C_{\uparrow}(0).$$

Substituting in  $C_{\uparrow}(0) = 0$  and  $C_{\downarrow}(0) = 1$  simplifies the expression to

$$C_{\downarrow}(\tau) = 1 - \frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^{\tau} dt \langle \downarrow, t | H'(t) | \downarrow, t \rangle.$$

- Next, we substitute  $|\uparrow, t\rangle$ ,  $|\downarrow, t\rangle$  and  $H'(t)$  into the expressions for  $C_{\uparrow}(\tau)$  and  $C_{\downarrow}(\tau)$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} C_{\uparrow}(\tau) &= -\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^{\tau} dt e^{i\frac{\mu_B B_z}{\hbar} t} \langle \uparrow | \mu_B B_x \frac{t}{\tau} \sigma_x | \downarrow \rangle e^{i\frac{\mu_B B_z}{\hbar} t} \\ C_{\downarrow}(\tau) &= -\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^{\tau} dt e^{-i\frac{\mu_B B_z}{\hbar} t} \langle \downarrow | \mu_B B_x \frac{t}{\tau} \sigma_x | \downarrow \rangle e^{i\frac{\mu_B B_z}{\hbar} t}. \end{aligned}$$

Note the complex conjugations when moving the exponential factor out of the bra term. To find  $C_{\uparrow}(\tau)$  and  $C_{\downarrow}(\tau)$ , we have to calculate the two matrix elements  $\langle \uparrow | \sigma_x | \downarrow \rangle$  and  $\langle \downarrow | \sigma_x | \downarrow \rangle$ , which we'll find in spin basis  $\{|\uparrow\rangle, |\downarrow\rangle\}$  using spinors.

We start by finding the ket term  $\sigma_x |\downarrow\rangle$ , which reads

$$\sigma_x |\downarrow\rangle \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow |\uparrow\rangle.$$

Using  $\sigma_x |\downarrow\rangle = |\uparrow\rangle$  and applying the orthonormality of  $|\uparrow\rangle$  and  $|\downarrow\rangle$  gives

$$\langle \uparrow | \sigma_x | \downarrow \rangle = \langle \uparrow | \uparrow \rangle = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \langle \downarrow | \sigma_x | \downarrow \rangle = \langle \downarrow | \uparrow \rangle = 0.$$

Because  $\langle \downarrow | \sigma_x | \downarrow \rangle = 0$ , we have  $C_{\downarrow}(\tau) = 0$ .

- We find the remaining coefficient  $C_{\uparrow}(\tau)$  by direct calculation:

$$\begin{aligned} C_{\uparrow}(\tau) &= -\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^{\tau} dt e^{i\frac{\mu_B B_z}{\hbar} t} \langle \uparrow | \mu_B B_x \frac{t}{\tau} \sigma_x | \downarrow \rangle e^{i\frac{\mu_B B_z}{\hbar} t} dt \\ &= -\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^{\tau} dt e^{2i\frac{\mu_B B_z}{\hbar} t} \mu_B B_x \frac{t}{\tau} dt, \end{aligned}$$

where we've used  $\langle \uparrow | \sigma_x | \downarrow \rangle = 1$ . In terms of the new variable  $u = \frac{2\mu_B B_z}{\hbar} t$ , the resulting integral, using integration by parts, evaluates to

$$\begin{aligned} C_{\uparrow}(\tau) &= -\frac{i}{\hbar} \frac{\mu_B B_x}{\tau} \int_0^{\frac{2\mu_B B_z}{\hbar} \tau} \left( \frac{\hbar}{2\mu_B B_z} du \right) e^{iu} \left( \frac{\hbar}{2\mu_B B_z} u \right) \\ &= -\frac{i}{\hbar} \frac{\mu_B B_x}{\tau} \left( \frac{\hbar}{2\mu_B B_z} \right)^2 \int_0^{\frac{2\mu_B B_z}{\hbar} \tau} u e^{iu} du \\ &= -\frac{i}{\hbar} \frac{\mu_B B_x}{\tau} \left( \frac{\hbar}{2\mu_B B_z} \right)^2 (-iu + 1) e^{iu} \Big|_0^{\frac{2\mu_B B_z}{\hbar} \tau} \\ &= -\frac{i B_x}{2 B_z} \frac{\hbar}{2\mu_B B_z \tau} \left[ \left( 1 - i \frac{2\mu_B B_z \tau}{\hbar} \right) e^{i\frac{2\mu_B B_z \tau}{\hbar}} - 1 \right]. \end{aligned}$$

- In terms of  $C_{\uparrow}(\tau)$  the first-order approximation to the wavefunction  $|\psi, \tau\rangle$  is thus

$$|\psi, \tau\rangle = 1 \cdot |\downarrow, \tau\rangle - \frac{iB_x}{2B_z} \frac{\hbar}{2\mu_B B_z \tau} \left[ \left( 1 - i \frac{2\mu_B B_z \tau}{\hbar} \right) e^{i \frac{2\mu_B B_z \tau}{\hbar}} - 1 \right] |\uparrow, \tau\rangle.$$

### Limit Case for Large $\tau$

- First, for shorthand, we define

$$\alpha \equiv \frac{2\mu_B B_z \tau}{\hbar} = \frac{\Delta E}{\hbar} \tau,$$

where  $\Delta E$  is the energy difference between the energies  $E_{\downarrow, \uparrow} = \pm \mu_B B_z$ .

We start with the limit case  $\alpha \gg 1$ , which corresponds to large  $\tau$ , i.e. turning on the  $x$  component of the magnetic field slowly. In the limit  $\alpha \gg 1$ , we have

$$\frac{(1 - i\alpha)e^{i\alpha} - 1}{\alpha} \approx -ie^{i\alpha}.$$

The complete wavefunction  $|\psi, \tau\rangle$  is then

$$\begin{aligned} |\psi, \tau\rangle &= |\downarrow, \tau\rangle - \frac{1}{2} \frac{B_x}{B_z} e^{i \left( \frac{2\mu_B B_z \tau}{\hbar} \right)} |\uparrow, \tau\rangle \\ &= |\downarrow\rangle e^{i \frac{\mu_B B_z \tau}{\hbar}} - \frac{1}{2} \frac{B_x}{B_z} \exp \left( i \frac{\mu_B B_z \tau}{\hbar} \right) |\uparrow\rangle, \end{aligned}$$

where we've substituted in  $|\downarrow, \tau\rangle$  and  $|\uparrow, \tau\rangle$  in the last line.

- Next, recall that if the spin operator  $\mathbf{S}$  acts on a wavefunction  $|\psi\rangle$  to give

$$\mathbf{S} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}} |\psi\rangle = \frac{\hbar}{2} |\psi\rangle,$$

where  $\hat{\mathbf{n}} = (\cos \phi \sin \theta, \sin \phi \sin \theta, \cos \theta)$  is a unit direction vector, the corresponding solution for  $|\psi\rangle$  is

$$|\psi\rangle = \cos \frac{\theta}{2} |\uparrow\rangle + \sin \frac{\theta}{2} e^{i\phi} |\downarrow\rangle.$$

We can then find the spatial orientation  $(\phi, \theta)$  of the wavefunction's spin by matching the wavefunction to the above expression in terms of  $\phi$  and  $\theta$ .

- Recall that a wavefunction is determined only up to a constant phase factor. With this in mind, we will first re-write the wavefunction  $|\psi, \tau\rangle$  so that  $\cos \frac{\theta}{2} \in \mathbb{R}^+$ , which will make it possible to compare  $|\psi, \tau\rangle$  to the general form

$$|\psi\rangle = \cos \frac{\theta}{2} |\uparrow\rangle + \sin \frac{\theta}{2} e^{i\phi} |\downarrow\rangle,$$

and thus determine the directions  $\phi$  and  $\theta$  of our particle's spin at  $t = \tau$ . We do this by factoring out and then neglecting a constant phase factor  $e^{i \frac{\mu_B B_z \tau}{\hbar}}$  from  $|\psi, \tau\rangle$ , which gives

$$|\psi, \tau\rangle = -e^{i \frac{\mu_B B_z \tau}{\hbar}} \left[ \frac{1}{2} \frac{B_x}{B_z} |\uparrow\rangle - |\downarrow\rangle \right] \rightarrow \frac{1}{2} \frac{B_x}{B_z} |\uparrow\rangle - |\downarrow\rangle.$$

We then compare  $|\psi, \tau\rangle$  to  $|\psi\rangle = \cos \frac{\theta}{2} |\uparrow\rangle + \sin \frac{\theta}{2} e^{i\phi} |\downarrow\rangle$  to get

$$\cos \frac{\theta}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{B_x}{B_z} \quad \text{and} \quad \sin \frac{\theta}{2} e^{i\phi} = -1.$$

- Because  $B_x \ll B_z$ , we can write  $\theta = \pi - \epsilon$  for  $\epsilon \ll 1$  and thus

$$\cos \frac{\theta}{2} = \cos \left( \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\epsilon}{2} \right) = \sin \frac{\epsilon}{2} \approx \frac{\epsilon}{2} = \frac{B_x}{2B_z} \implies \epsilon = \frac{B_x}{B_z}.$$

Next, we consider

$$\sin \frac{\theta}{2} = \sin \left( \frac{\pi - \epsilon}{2} \right) = \cos \frac{\epsilon}{2} \approx 1 + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \implies e^{i\phi} = -1 \implies \phi = \pi.$$

Geometrically, the angles  $\theta = \pi - \epsilon$  where  $\epsilon = \frac{B_x}{B_z}$  and  $\phi = \pi$  mean the particle's spin points in the third quadrant and makes an angle  $\epsilon$  with the  $-z$  axis. Physically, this means the particle's spin points opposite the total magnetic field  $\mathbf{B}(t) = (B_x(t), 0, B_z)$  for the course of the perturbation for  $t \in [0, \tau]$ . This orientation of time-dependent spin is analogous to the spin orientation in the initial ground state  $|\downarrow\rangle$  (spin down), which pointed opposite the initial magnetic field  $\mathbf{B} = (0, 0, B_z)$ .

### Limit Case for Small $\tau$

- We now consider the opposite case, in which we turn on the field rapidly relative to the characteristic time  $\frac{\hbar}{\Delta E}$ . In this case we have  $\tau \ll \frac{\hbar}{\Delta E}$ , which corresponds to  $\alpha \ll 1$ .
- To make the next step clearer, we write the time-evolved wavefunction in terms of  $\alpha$  as

$$|\psi, \tau\rangle = e^{i\frac{\alpha}{2}} |\downarrow\rangle - i \frac{B_x}{2B_z} \frac{(1 - i\alpha)e^{i\alpha} - 1}{\alpha} e^{i\frac{\alpha}{2}} |\downarrow\rangle.$$

We then expand the second term in the limit  $\alpha \ll 1$  to get

$$\frac{(1 - i\alpha)e^{i\alpha} - 1}{\alpha} \approx \frac{(1 - i\alpha)(1 + i\alpha + \dots) - 1}{\alpha} \approx \frac{1 + \alpha^2 + \dots - 1}{\alpha} = \mathcal{O}(\alpha) \ll 1.$$

This result, in terms of the time-dependent wavefunction  $|\psi, \tau\rangle$ , implies

$$|\psi, \tau\rangle = e^{i\frac{\alpha}{2}} |\downarrow\rangle.$$

In other words, for small  $\tau$ , the particle's spin points in the same direction as the initial state  $|\psi, 0\rangle = |\downarrow\rangle$  throughout the entire perturbation. As a general rule, we expect  $\tau \gtrsim \frac{\hbar}{\Delta E}$  for any notable change in  $|\psi\rangle$  from the initial state during the course of the perturbation.

## 15 Fifteenth Exercise Set

### 15.1 Rabi Oscillations

Consider a particle with spin  $s = 1/2$  in the initial state  $|\psi, 0\rangle = |\downarrow\rangle$  in the presence of the Hamiltonian

$$H = \frac{\Delta E}{2} \sigma_z + \lambda \cos(\omega t) \sigma_x.$$

Find the particle's time-dependent wavefunction  $|\psi, t\rangle$ .

- First, we note that this Hamiltonian is in fact nearly identical to the Hamiltonian in the previous problem, where the Hamiltonian was

$$H(t) = \mu_B \sigma_z B_z + \mu_B \sigma_x B_x \frac{t}{\tau} \equiv \frac{\Delta E}{2} \sigma_z + \lambda \sigma_x \frac{t}{\tau},$$

where we have defined  $\Delta E = 2\mu_B B_z$  and  $\lambda = \mu_B B_x$  to highlight the similarity. The only difference between our current problem and the previous problem is the time dependence—this was linear in the previous problem, but is sinusoidal in the current problem.

- When solving the present problem, because of the time-dependent cosine term, we won't assume a priori that the probability for transition from the initial ground state to higher excited states is small. As a result, we cannot use the time-dependent perturbation approach from the previous section, which assumes transition probability is small. Instead, we will begin with the time-dependent Schrödinger equation

$$H(t) |\psi, t\rangle = i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\psi, t\rangle.$$

Note that we cannot use the usual time-evolution approach because the Hamiltonian is time-dependent—we must solve the Schrödinger equation directly.

### Attempt 1 (won't work, but useful as an intermediate step)

- We begin our first attempt by writing the time-dependent wavefunction as the linear combination

$$|\psi, t\rangle = c_\uparrow(t) |\uparrow\rangle + c_\downarrow(t) |\downarrow\rangle.$$

Next, recall that in Dirac notation, the spin matrices  $\sigma_x$  and  $\sigma_z$  are written

$$\sigma_z = |\uparrow\rangle \langle\uparrow| - |\downarrow\rangle \langle\downarrow| \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_x = |\uparrow\rangle \langle\downarrow| + |\downarrow\rangle \langle\uparrow|.$$

- We then substitute the time-dependent wavefunction into the Schrödinger equation and apply the Dirac-notation definitions of the spin matrices to get

$$\frac{\Delta E}{2} c_\uparrow |\uparrow\rangle - \frac{\Delta E}{2} c_\downarrow |\downarrow\rangle + \lambda \cos(\omega t) c_\uparrow |\downarrow\rangle + \lambda \cos(\omega t) c_\downarrow |\uparrow\rangle = i\hbar \dot{c}_\uparrow |\uparrow\rangle + i\hbar \dot{c}_\downarrow |\downarrow\rangle,$$

where  $\dot{c}$  denotes the time-derivative of the coefficients  $c$ .

- Next, we apply the orthonormality of the basis states  $|\downarrow\rangle$  and  $|\uparrow\rangle$  to get the system of equations

$$\frac{\Delta E}{2} c_\uparrow + \lambda \cos(\omega t) c_\downarrow = i\hbar \dot{c}_\uparrow \quad \text{and} \quad -\frac{\Delta E}{2} c_\downarrow + \lambda \cos(\omega t) c_\uparrow = i\hbar \dot{c}_\downarrow.$$

Unfortunately, this system of coupled differential equations for  $c_\downarrow$  and  $c_\uparrow$  is not solvable because of the time-dependent coefficient  $\cos(\omega t)$ . Evidently, we need to make an approximation. Since we have ruled out first-order time-dependent perturbation theory, we will need a novel approach.

### Second Approach



- We begin by moving some of the time dependence of the coefficients  $c(t)$  into the basis states, similar to the first steps in first-order perturbation-theory. This gives

$$|\psi, t\rangle = c_{\uparrow}(t)e^{-i\omega't}|\uparrow\rangle + c_{\downarrow}(t)e^{i\omega't}|\downarrow\rangle,$$

where  $\hbar\omega' = \Delta E$ . We then substitute  $|\psi, t\rangle$  into the Schrödinger equation to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\Delta E}{2}c_{\uparrow}e^{-i\omega't}|\uparrow\rangle - \frac{\Delta E}{2}c_{\downarrow}e^{i\omega't}|\downarrow\rangle + \lambda\cos(\omega t)c_{\uparrow}e^{-i\omega't}|\downarrow\rangle + \lambda\cos(\omega t)c_{\downarrow}e^{i\omega't}|\uparrow\rangle \\ & = i\hbar\dot{c}_{\uparrow}e^{-i\omega't}|\uparrow\rangle + i\hbar\dot{c}_{\downarrow}e^{i\omega't}|\downarrow\rangle + \hbar\omega'c_{\uparrow}e^{-i\omega't}|\uparrow\rangle - \hbar\omega'c_{\downarrow}e^{i\omega't}|\downarrow\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

- As before, we apply the orthonormality of the basis states  $|\downarrow\rangle$  and  $|\uparrow\rangle$  to get the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\Delta E}{2}c_{\uparrow}e^{-i\omega't} + \lambda\cos(\omega t)c_{\downarrow}e^{i\omega't} = i\hbar\dot{c}_{\uparrow}e^{-i\omega't} + \hbar\omega'c_{\uparrow}e^{-i\omega't} \\ & -\frac{\Delta E}{2}c_{\downarrow}e^{i\omega't} + \lambda\cos(\omega t)c_{\uparrow}e^{-i\omega't} = i\hbar\dot{c}_{\downarrow}e^{i\omega't} - \hbar\omega'c_{\downarrow}e^{i\omega't}. \end{aligned}$$

Next, we multiply the first equation by  $e^{i\omega't}$  and the second by  $e^{-i\omega't}$  and then rearrange to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \left(\frac{\Delta E}{2} - \hbar\omega'\right)c_{\uparrow} + \lambda\cos(\omega t)e^{2i\omega't}c_{\downarrow} = i\hbar\dot{c}_{\uparrow} \\ & \left(-\frac{\Delta E}{2} + \hbar\omega'\right)c_{\downarrow} + \lambda\cos(\omega t)e^{-2i\omega't}c_{\uparrow} = i\hbar\dot{c}_{\downarrow}. \end{aligned}$$

Again, we have a system of coupled differential equations, but this one will be approximately solveable. Our trick is to write

$$\cos(\omega t)e^{2i\omega't} = \frac{1}{2}\left[e^{i(\omega+2\omega')t} + e^{i(-\omega+2\omega')t}\right].$$

Note that  $\omega'$  doesn't have a priori physical meaning—it is related to the energy difference  $\Delta E$ , which is a free parameter of our system. We now choose  $\omega'$  such that  $2\omega' = \omega$ , i.e.  $\omega'$  is half the oscillation frequency of the  $x$ -dependent perturbation term. With  $2\omega' = \omega$ , the expression  $\cos(\omega t)e^{2i\omega't}$  simplifies to

$$\cos(\omega t)e^{2i\omega't} = \frac{1}{2}(e^{2i\omega t} + 1).$$

Similarly, the analogous expression with a negative exponent reads

$$\cos(\omega t)e^{-2i\omega't} = \frac{1}{2}(e^{-2i\omega t} + 1).$$

In terms of these expressions, the system of equations for  $c_{\downarrow}$  and  $c_{\uparrow}$  reads

$$\begin{aligned} & \left(\frac{\Delta E}{2} - \hbar\omega'\right)c_{\uparrow} + \frac{\lambda}{2}(e^{2i\omega t} + 1)c_{\downarrow} = i\hbar\dot{c}_{\uparrow} \\ & \left(-\frac{\Delta E}{2} + \hbar\omega'\right)c_{\downarrow} + \frac{\lambda}{2}(e^{-2i\omega t} + 1)c_{\uparrow} = i\hbar\dot{c}_{\downarrow}. \end{aligned}$$

- We now make an assumption: we assume any possible oscillation between the ground and excited states in the eventual solution will be small relative to the frequency  $\omega$  of the  $x$ -dependent perturbation term. In other words, we assume  $c_\uparrow(t)$  and  $c_\downarrow(t)$  change slowly relative to  $2\omega$ . We will then check back to ensure the assumption is valid when we get our final solution.

Under the assumption that  $c_\uparrow(t)$  and  $c_\downarrow(t)$  change slowly relative to  $\omega$ , we can neglect the  $e^{\pm 2i\omega t}$  terms in the coefficients of  $c_\downarrow$  and  $c_{ua}$ , which simplifies the system of equations for  $c_\uparrow(t)$  and  $c_\downarrow(t)$  to

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\frac{\Delta E}{2} - \frac{\hbar\omega}{2}\right)c_\uparrow + \frac{\lambda}{2}c_\downarrow &= i\hbar\dot{c}_\uparrow \\ \left(-\frac{\Delta E}{2} + \frac{\hbar\omega}{2}\right)c_\downarrow + \frac{\lambda}{2}c_\uparrow &= i\hbar\dot{c}_\downarrow,\end{aligned}$$

where we have substituted in  $\omega' = \omega/2$ . This system of equations is now analytically solvable, since the coefficients are constant.

- Recall the initial state is  $|\psi, 0\rangle = |\downarrow\rangle$ , which corresponds to

$$c_\uparrow(0) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad c_\downarrow(0) = 1.$$

With these initial coefficients in mind, we solve the coupled equations for  $c_\downarrow$  and  $c_\uparrow$  with the ansatz

$$c_\uparrow(t) = \alpha e^{-i\Omega t} \quad \text{and} \quad c_\downarrow(t) = \beta e^{-i\Omega t}.$$

Substituting this ansatz into the system of equations leads to

$$\begin{aligned}-(\hbar\omega - \Delta E)\frac{\alpha}{2} + \frac{\lambda}{2}\beta &= +\hbar\Omega\alpha \\ \frac{\lambda}{2}\alpha + (\hbar\omega - \Delta E)\frac{\beta}{2} &= \hbar\Omega\beta,\end{aligned}$$

where we have canceled out the common exponential term.

- In matrix form, the system of equations reads

$$\begin{pmatrix} -\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2} - \hbar\Omega & \frac{\lambda}{2} \\ \frac{\lambda}{2} & \frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2} - \hbar\Omega \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{pmatrix} = 0.$$

This  $(2 \times 2)$  system will have two linearly independent solutions, and the final solution is a linear combination of the two. To solve the system for the eigenvalues  $\Omega$ , we require the matrix's determinant is zero, which gives

$$\begin{aligned}\left(-\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2} - \hbar\Omega\right)\left(\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2} - \hbar\Omega\right) - \left(\frac{\lambda}{2}\right)^2 &\equiv 0 \\ (\hbar\Omega)^2 - \left(\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{\lambda}{2}\right)^2 &= 0 \\ \hbar\Omega &= \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\lambda}{2}\right)^2} \equiv \pm \hbar\Omega_0,\end{aligned}$$

where we have defined

$$\Omega_0 = \frac{1}{\hbar} \sqrt{\left(\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\lambda}{2}\right)^2}.$$

- With the eigenvalues  $\Omega = \pm\Omega_0$  known, the corresponding eigenvectors are

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2} \mp \hbar\Omega_0\right)\alpha + \left(\frac{\lambda}{2}\right)\beta = 0.$$

The coefficients  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  in the ansatzes for  $c_\downarrow$  and  $c_\uparrow$  are thus related by

$$\begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{pmatrix} \propto \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\lambda}{2} \\ [1mm]\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2} \pm \hbar\Omega_0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We leave off normalization for now—it turns out we won't need it.

- The solutions for  $c_\downarrow$  and  $c_\uparrow$  are thus the linear combinations

$$\begin{aligned} c_\uparrow(t) &= A\frac{\lambda}{2}e^{-i\Omega_0 t} + B\frac{\lambda}{2}e^{i\Omega_0 t} \\ c_\downarrow(t) &= A\left(\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2} + \hbar\Omega_0\right)e^{-i\Omega_0 t} + B\left(\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2} - \hbar\Omega_0\right)e^{i\Omega_0 t}. \end{aligned}$$

We find the coefficients  $A$  and  $B$  from the initial conditions

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &\equiv c_\uparrow(0) = A\frac{\lambda}{2} + B\frac{\lambda}{2} \\ 1 &\equiv c_\downarrow(0) = A\left(\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2} + \hbar\Omega_0\right) + B\left(\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2} - \hbar\Omega_0\right), \end{aligned}$$

which leads to

$$2A\hbar\Omega_0 = 1 \implies A = -B = \frac{1}{2\hbar\Omega_0}.$$

- In terms of  $c_\downarrow$  and  $c_\uparrow$ , the wavefunction  $|\psi, t\rangle$  is then

$$\begin{aligned} |\psi, t\rangle &= \frac{1}{2\hbar\Omega_0}\frac{\lambda}{2}\left(e^{-i\Omega_0 t} - e^{i\Omega_0 t}\right)e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t}|\uparrow\rangle + \\ &+ \frac{1}{2\hbar\Omega_0}\left[\left(\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2} + \hbar\Omega_0\right)e^{-i\Omega_0 t} - \left(\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2} - \hbar\Omega_0\right)e^{i\Omega_0 t}\right]e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}t}|\downarrow\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

In terms of sines and cosines, the wavefunction reads

$$|\psi, t\rangle = -\frac{i\lambda}{2\hbar\Omega_0}\sin(\Omega_0 t)e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t}|\uparrow\rangle + \left(-\frac{i(\hbar\omega - \Delta E)}{2\hbar\Omega_0}\sin\Omega_0 t + \cos\Omega_0 t\right)e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}t}|\downarrow\rangle.$$

## Discussion of Results

- Interpretation: our system is a two-state system with energies  $\pm\frac{\Delta E}{2}$ .

We then consider a hypothetical measurement at some time  $t > 0$  to determine our particle's state. In principle, we could measure either energy or  $z$  component of spin, since spin and Hamiltonian commute. Since the perturbation term  $\lambda\sigma_x \cos\omega t$  complicates an energy measurement, we choose to measure the  $z$  component of the particle's spin.

The state  $|\psi, t\rangle$  is already written in terms of  $S_z$ 's basis functions  $|\downarrow\rangle$  and  $|\uparrow\rangle$ , and the possible measurement outcomes for  $S_z$  are

Result	Probability
$\frac{\hbar}{2}$	$P_{\uparrow}(t)$
$-\frac{\hbar}{2}$	$P_{\downarrow}(t)$

- The probability  $P_{\uparrow}$  for spin up is

$$P_{\uparrow}(t) = \left| -\frac{i\lambda}{2\hbar\Omega_0} \sin \Omega_0 t e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}t} \right|^2 = \left( \frac{\lambda}{2\hbar\Omega_0} \right)^2 \sin^2 \Omega_0 t.$$

- Meanwhile, the probability  $P_{\downarrow}$  for spin down is

$$P_{\downarrow}(t) = \left| \left( -i\frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2\hbar\Omega_0} \sin \Omega_0 t + \cos \Omega_0 t \right) e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}t} \right|^2 = \left( \frac{\omega\omega - \Delta E}{2\hbar\Omega_0} \right)^2 \sin^2 \Omega_0 t + \cos^2 \Omega_0 t.$$

We then rearrange  $P_{\downarrow}$  to get

$$P_{\downarrow}(t) = 1 - \sin^2 \Omega_0 t \left[ 1 - \left( \frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2\hbar\Omega_0} \right)^2 \right] = 1 - \sin^2(\Omega_0 t) \frac{(2\hbar\Omega_0)^2 - (\hbar\omega - \Delta E)^2}{(2\hbar\Omega_0)^2}.$$

Finally, we substitute in definition of  $\Omega_0$  to get

$$P_{\downarrow}(t) = 1 - \sin^2(\Omega_0 t) \left( \frac{\lambda}{2\hbar\Omega_0} \right)^2.$$

Note that the sum of probabilities  $P_{\uparrow}(t) + P_{\downarrow}(t)$  is one, as it must be.

- The initial probability for detecting the particle with spin-up is zero;  $P_{\uparrow}$  then oscillates with time from 0 to  $\left( \frac{\lambda}{2\hbar\Omega_0} \right)^2$ . Meanwhile, the initial probability for detecting the particle with spin down is one, and  $P_{\downarrow}$  then oscillates with time from 1 to  $\left( \frac{\lambda}{2\hbar\Omega_0} \right)^2$ .
- The frequency  $\Omega_0$  is called the Rabi frequency—recall that it is defined as

$$\hbar\Omega_0 = \sqrt{\left( \frac{\hbar\omega - \Delta E}{2} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\lambda}{2} \right)^2}.$$

In the resonant case  $\hbar\omega = \Delta E$ , the Rabi frequency simplifies to

$$\hbar\Omega_0 = \frac{\lambda}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \left( \frac{\lambda}{2\hbar\Omega_0} \right)^2 = 1.$$

In this case the amplitude of probability oscillations  $\left( \frac{\lambda}{2\hbar\Omega_0} \right)^2$  is exactly one.

- Finally, we check the validity of the earlier assumption/approximation

$$e^{\pm 2i\omega t} \approx 0 \iff \Omega_0 \ll 2\omega.$$

At resonance, where  $\hbar\Omega_0 = \frac{\lambda}{2}$ , this condition reads

$$\frac{\lambda}{2} \ll 2\omega = 2\Delta E \implies \lambda \ll \Delta E.$$

The requirement  $\lambda \ll \Delta E$  is consistent with the perturbation theory examples we have studied so far. Note, however, that we could not solve the problem with perturbation theory—time-dependent perturbation theory assumes a low probability of transition between states, but the probability for transition between states is large—even equal to one at resonance.